

Bit *by* Bit

Connect

الصف الرابع الابتدائي
الفصل الدراسي الأول

دليل ولي الأمر Parents' Guide



Primary
4
1^{st.}
Term

A B C



QR Codes

Listen to
Vocabulary &
Audioscripts



التوزيع: ١٠ شارع كامل صدفى - الفجالة - القاهرة

تليفون: ٢٥٩١٩١٦٥



للاستعلام وإبداء الآراء والإقتراحات - الإدارة/ تليفون: ٢٥٨٨٠١٠٢

2024

Aims of the Parents' Guide

This Parents' Guide creates an enjoyable and engaging environment full of fun engaging activities, to encourage the students' language development.

The Parents' Guide aims to give Primary Four students the tools they need to develop their knowledge and use of English, and to increase their grasp of both the spoken and the written language, including basic phonetic sounds.

The course has been carefully designed to support whole child development; it not only supports the language development of the child, but also attends to their physical, cognitive, social and emotional needs.

Therefore, the activities combine life skills, values, issues and challenges, and Content and Language Integrated Learning (CLIL) with games, stories and projects. This is done in order to create a comprehensive, successful learning experience.

أهداف دليل ولي الأمر

يقدم دليل ولي الأمر إطار شيق وجذاب مع كثير من الأنشطة الممتعة وذلك لتشجيع التلاميذ في تطوير اللغة.

يهدف دليل ولي الأمر إلى توفير الأدوات المطلوبة لتلاميذ الصف الرابع الابتدائي لزيادة معلوماتهم وتطوير استخدامهم للغة الإنجليزية سواء في مهارات التحدث أو الكتابة بالإضافة إلى أصوات النطق الأساسية.

وقد تم إعداد هذا المنهج بعناية لمساعدة تطوير التلاميذ بشكل عام ليس في اللغة وحسب ولكن أيضاً يقدم لهم ما يلبي احتياجاتهم النفسية والمعرفية والاجتماعية والعاطفية.

ولذلك فإن الأنشطة تجمع بين المهارات الحياتية والقيم والقضايا والتحديات وتم تضمين المحتوى بالعباب وقصص ومشروعات. وتم عمل كل ذلك لخلق مجال تعلم متكامل وناجح.

Teaching phonics

The teaching of phonics plays an important role in developing literacy. An awareness of phonics facilitates the students' ability to discriminate between similar sounds and this develops their listening skills.

تدريس الصوتيات

يلعب تدريس الصوتيات دوراً هاماً في تطوير معرفة القراءة والكتابة. يعمل الوعي بالصوتيات على تسهيل قدرة التلاميذ على التمييز بين الأصوات المماثلة وبذلك يطور مهارات الاستماع الخاصة بهم.

Stories, activities, and songs promote and develop critical thinking and problem solving skills. The aim is to make thinking fun for children. While learning English, specific attention should be dedicated to the development of a child's ability to recall information, ask questions, make decisions, solve problems, evaluate and organize information. Within the materials as a whole, the students actively contribute to their own cognitive development, which helps to create confident, smart, early thinkers.

تعمل القصص والأنشطة والأغاني على تعزيز وتطوير مهارات التفكير النقدي وحل المشكلات. الهدف هو جعل التفكير ممتع للأطفال. أثناء تعلم اللغة الإنجليزية، ينبغي تخصيص اهتمام خاص لتطوير قدرة الطفل على تذكر المعلومات وطرح الأسئلة واتخاذ القرارات وحل المشكلات وتقييم وتنظيم المعلومات. وفي المادة الدراسية المقدمة، يساهم التلاميذ بشكل فعال في تطويرهم المعرفي، مما يساعد على خلق مفكرين مبتكرين واثقين وأذكياء.

Teaching values

Values education is the teaching of values such as tolerance, honesty, cooperation and independence. These values help to create good citizens, and are very important development step for children of this age.

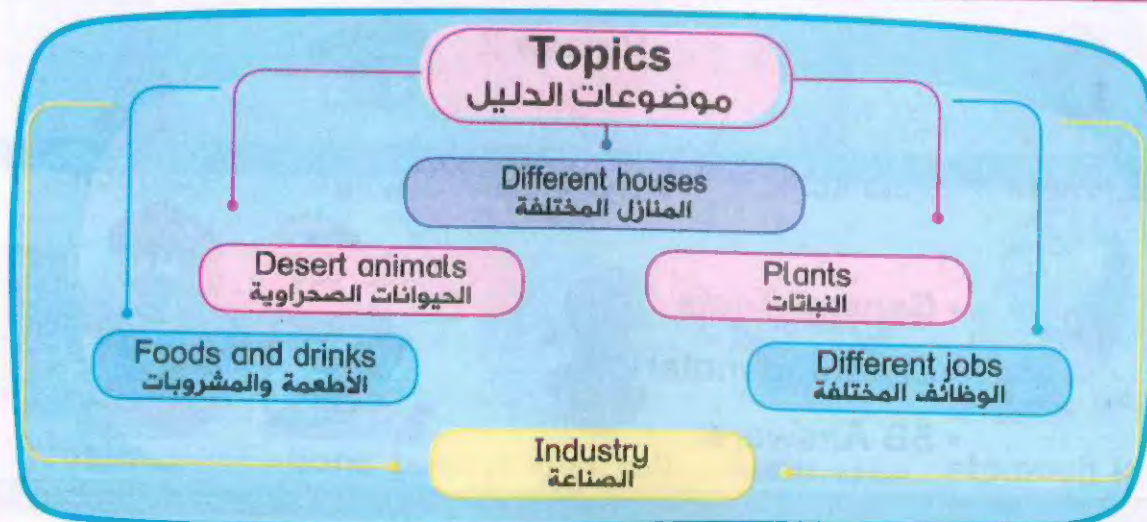
إن تعليم القيم هو تعليم القيم مثل التسامح والصدق والتعاون والاستقلال. هذه القيم تساعد على خلق مواطنين صالحين، وهي خطوة إنمائية مهمة جداً للأطفال في هذا العمر.

The five major areas identified by the framework are:

- 1- Non-discrimination issues
- 2- Environmental responsibility issues
- 3- Preventative and therapeutic health issues
- 4- Loyalty and belonging issues
- 5- Community participation issues

المجالات الخمسة الرئيسية المقدمة في المنهج هي:

- ١- قضايا عدم التمييز
- ٢- قضايا المسؤولية عن البيئة
- ٣- قضايا الصحة الوقائية والعلاجية
- ٤- قضايا الولاء والانتماء
- ٥ - قضايا المشاركة المجتمعية





Contents



Part 1

Revision on Primary 3

Punctuation

How to write paragraphs and emails

Let's remember!

Specification for fourth year primary

Part 2

Theme 1: I discover myself

Unit 1 I feel good

Unit 2 Desert animals

Unit 3 Why do we grow plants?

Review 1

Theme 2: Myself and others

Unit 4 Where do you live?

Unit 5 Where do you work?

Unit 6 What do you do?

Review 2

Project

Part 3

- General Tests
- Listening materials
- SB Answers



مراجعة على ماسبق دارسته بالصف الثالث الابتدائي

A Revision on Vocabulary مراجعة على المفردات

Healthy food & drinks الأطعمة والمشروبات الصحية



banana

موزة



apple

تفاحة



water

مياه



fish

سمك



fruit

فاكهة



vegetables

خضراوات

Unhealthy food & drinks الأطعمة والمشروبات غير الصحية



chocolate

شيكولاته



cola

كولا (مياه غازية)



pizza

بيتزا



cake

تورتة



ice cream

آيس كريم

Parts of the body أجزاء الجسم



foot

قدم



feet

اقدام



leg

رجل



mouth

فم



arm

ذراع



nose

انف



eye

عين



hand

يد



knee

ركبة



heart

قلب



skin

جلد



bone

عظمة



hair

شعر



teeth

أسنان



stomach

معدة

Feelings المشاعر



Illnesses الأمراض



At home في المنزل



At the zoo في حديقة الحيوان



Prepositions of place حروف الجر الخاصة بالمكان



B Revision on Language Functions مراجعة على الوظائف اللغوية

How do you feel? كيف تشعر؟

وللرد:

I feel + صفة. أنا أشعر بـ

1
لتسأل شخص
(كيف تشعر؟)
لنقول

- How do you feel?

I feel sad.

I can + inf. مصدر الفعل. أستطيع

- I can make you a sandwich!

2
للتعبير عن
القدرة على
فعل شيء
لنقول

Are you OK?

وللرد:

- Yes, I'm OK. / Or No, I feel sick.

What's the matter?

وللرد:

- أنا مصاب بـ + اسم المرض. I have a + المرض.

- What's the matter?

- I have a headache.

3
للسؤال بمعنى
(هل انت بخير؟)
نقول4
للسؤال بمعنى
مما تشكو؟
نقول

1 Let's + inf. مصدر الفعل هيا بنا

2 How about + verb + ing..? ماذا عن؟

5
للاقتراح
نستخدم:- Let's watch the lions.
- How about going to the pandas?

- Good idea! فكرة رائعة.

وللرد بالموافقة:

Where + is / are + مكان / اماكن؟

وللاجابة نستخدم جمل اعطاء الاتجاهات:

6
للسؤال عن
المكان
نستخدم

•go straight سرب بشكل مستقيم •turn right استدر يمينا •turn left استدر يسارا

•They're on the right. انهم على اليمين. •They're on the left. انهم على اليسار.

- Where is the zoo?

- Go straight, turn right, then turn left.

7

للسؤال
عن الاشياء
الموجودة
بالمزحل؟

- What's in the living room?

وللرد:

• There's a/an شيء + حروف الجر + الشيء.

- There's a lamp next to the television.

- There's a cupboard behind the table.

• نستخدم قبل الاسم المفرد الذي يعد a/an حيث تأتي قبل الكلمات التي تبدأ بأصوات متحركة.

• الحروف المتحركة هي (a / e / i / o / u) وباقي الحروف ساكنة ويأتي قبلها a:

- a → TV an → armchair

C Revision on Grammar مراجعة على القواعد اللغوية

• نستخدم زمن المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن شيء يحدث الان (اثناء الكلام)
• يتكون زمن المضارع المستمر كما يلي:Present
continuous
زمن المضارع
المستمر

1	2	3
I	am	+ verb + ing
He / She / It / اسم مفرد	+ is	
You / We / They / اسم جمع	are	

-I'm drawing a cat.

Question

• للسؤال ماذا تفعل؟ (في المضارع المستمر)

-What are you doing? ماذا تفعل؟

-I am taking a photo.

• وللإجابة نقول:

Negative

• لنفي الفعل في زمن المضارع المستمر نضع not بين am / is / are والفعل:

1	2	3	4
I	am	+ not + verb + ing	
He / She / It / اسم مفرد	+ is		
You / We / They / اسم جمع	are		

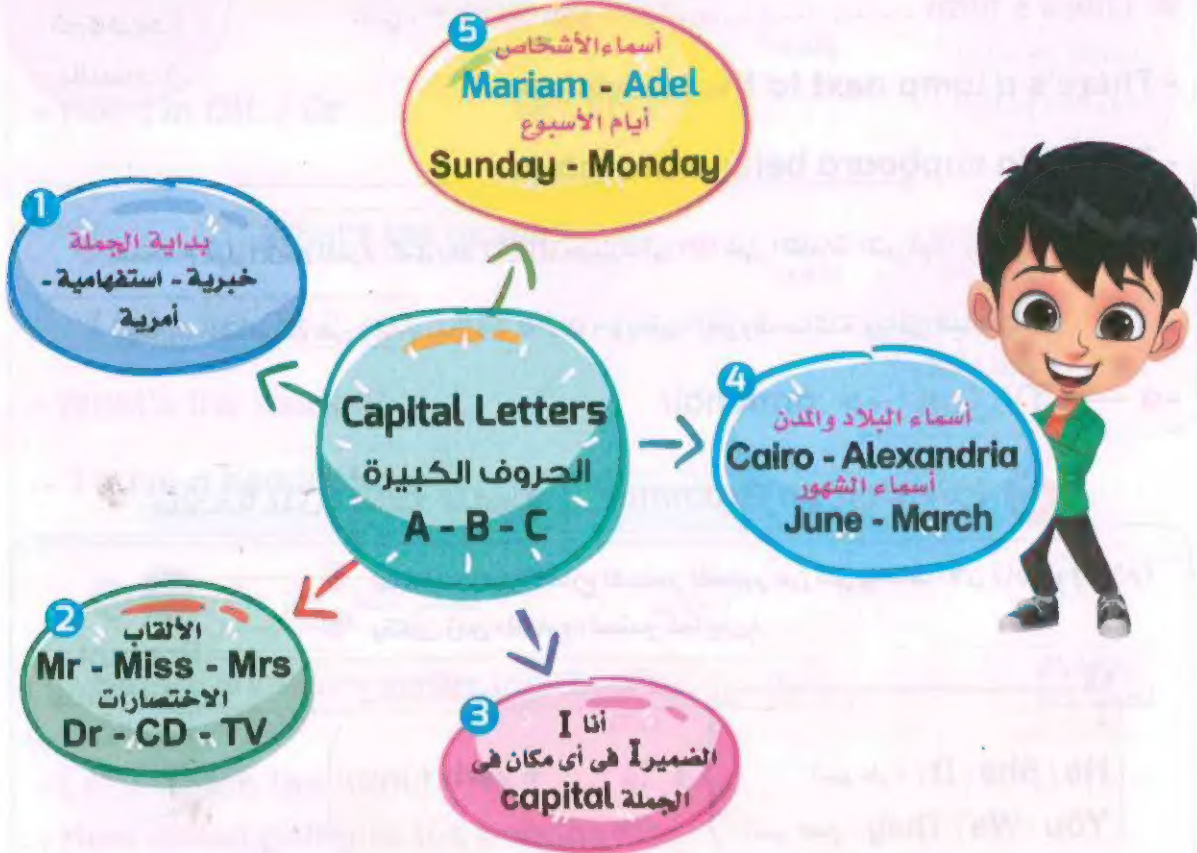
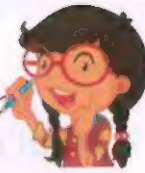
-I am not playing sports.

-He is not taking photos.

Punctuation

علامات الترقيم

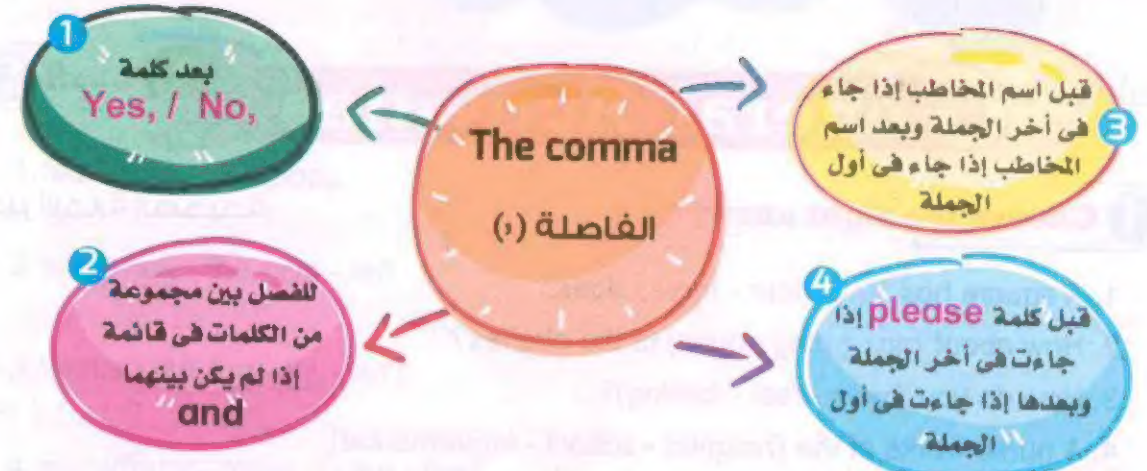
ABC



Examples:

1. Mrs Manar is a teacher. (جملة خبرية)
2. Close your book. (جملة أمرية)
3. Where's your pen? (جملة استفهامية)
4. I want some food. I'm hungry. (الضمير I)
5. We visited Alexandria in June. (أسماء مدن وشهور)
6. Mr Ashraf plays football on Sunday. (الألقاب وأيام الأسبوع)

Revision



Examples:

- Yes, they are. / No, they aren't. (بعد Yes, / No)
- I want paper, pencils and pens. (لفصل بين مجموعة كلمات في قائمة)
- Come here, Nabil. / Nabil, come here. (اسم مخاطب)
- Give me this book, please. / Please, give me this book. (كلمة Please)



Examples:

1. We are pupils. (جملة خبرية)
2. Close your eyes. (جملة أمرية)
3. What's your name? (جملة استفهامية)
4. Hello! Hatem. (علامة تعجب)

General Activities



1 Choose the right answer:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. A square has (two - four - three) sides.
2. How about (go - going - goes) to the giraffes?
3. How do you (feels - feel - feeling)?
4. A nurse works at the (hospital - school - supermarket).
5. The (heart - skin - stomach) digests our food.

1. A: What (color - time - book) is it? B: It's three o'clock.
2. Let's (clean - cleaning - cleans) the house.
3. There's a lamp (behind - between - next) to the armchair.
4. She's (drawing - draw - draws) a picture.
5. (When's - Where's - What's) the matter?

2 Read and match:

اقرأ وصل:

A

- 1 The hippo is
- 2 This is
- 3 Fruit and fish
- 4 There's a table
- 5 Don't drink

B

- a. next to the chair.
- b. too much cold.
- c. my bone.
- d. a very large animal.
- e. are healthy food.

A

- 1 I feel
- 2 I can make
- 3 She has
- 4 What's in
- 5 She isn't playing

B

- a. a headache.
- b. the kitchen?
- c. sports.
- d. sick.
- e. you a sandwich.

3 Read and reorder the following:

اقرأ ورتب الجمل:

1. feel - Yes - I - happy.
2. on - They - the - are - left.
3. tennis - playing - He - isn't.
4. in - What's - room - living - the?
5. about - going - How - the elephants - to?

1. green - It's - T-shirt - a .
2. watch - the - Let's - penguins.
3. you - doing - What - are?
4. beautiful - tall - She's - and.
5. behind - a - the chair - There's - bookcase.

4 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات ترقيم للآتي:

1. do you like cakes
2. my knee hurts
3. where's the park
4. it's on the computer
5. there's a couch in the living room



How to write a paragraph? كيف تكتب فقرة إنشائية؟

كيفية الإجابة على سؤال (paragraph)

يطلب من التلاميذ كتابة موضوع من ٢٤ كلمة من موضوعات كتاب المدرسة ويعطي للتلاميذ عناصر مساعدة مثل كلمتين أو سؤالين أو ملف حقائق لذلك نقدم شرح لكيفية التعامل مع هذا السؤال:

• حتى تكون الجملة بشكل صحيح يجب أن تتعلم مكونات الجملة وترتيبها في اللغة الإنجليزية حيث تتكون من:

أولاً ترتيب الجملة		
1	2	3
فاعل	فعل	تكملة الجملة
اسم شخص Adel	مضارع بسيط / مستمر is eating / eat / eats	مكان / ظرف زمان / صفة / حال school / yesterday tall / well
مكان park	ماضي بسيط / مستمر was going / went	
شيء table		

ثانياً: صيغ الجمل المختلفة

صفة + verb to be + فاعل	⇒	Eman is hungry.
وظيفة + verb to be + فاعل	⇒	Ashraf is a doctor.
مكان + حرف جر + فعل + فاعل	⇒	We went to the circus.
زمن + حرف جر + فعل + فاعل	⇒	We play on Friday.
مفعول + فعل + فاعل	⇒	I help her.
الساعة + حرف جر + فعل + فاعل	⇒	I sleep at 10 o'clock.

Write a paragraph of about TWENTY FOUR (24) words using the following guiding elements:
اكتب فقرة إنشائية من ٢٤ كلمة عن:

Your weekend

shopping - bought

I went shopping last weekend. I went with my mother by taxi. I bought a blue T-shirt and white socks. Then I ate ice cream. I had a great time.



How to write an email? كيف تكتب إيميل؟

To: البريد الإلكتروني الخاص بالمرسل إليه:

From: البريد الإلكتروني الخاص بالراسل:

Subject: موضوع أو عنوان الرسالة:

Dear + اسم المرسل إليه +
How are you? I want to tell you about

تكتب هنا جمل عادية كأننا نكتب براجراف عادي - - - - -

See you soon.

اسم الراسل

- اتبع الخطوات الآتية لكتابة بريد إلكتروني بشكل منتظم:

- ١- في السطر الأول من بريدك الإلكتروني أبدأ بكلمة "Dear" أو "Hi" ثم اكتب اسم المرسل إليه:
- ٢- في السطر الثاني أبدأ بـ: "I'm happy to write to you." "Thanks for writing to me."
- ٣- أسأل عن أحوال صديقك بـ: "How are you?" / "How are things?" / "How's life?"
- ٤- اذكر سبب إرسالك للإيميل ولماذا كتبت:
- ٥- يجب أن يحتوي بريدك الإلكتروني على فكرة واحدة فقط وليس أكثر من فكرة:
- ٦- عند الكتابة إلى صديق يمكنك استخدام لغة غير رسمية مثل كلمات: "awesome" أو "cool"
- ٧- قم بإنهاء بريدك الإلكتروني بعبارات مثل: "Write soon." أو "See you soon." أو "By for you now." أو "Hope to hear from you soon."

لاحظ

بعض التحويلات الآتية عند كتابة البريد الإلكتروني:

- ١- إذا كان في السؤال كلمة him أو her أو them قم بتحويلها في الإيميل إلى كلمة you.
- ٢- إذا كان في السؤال كلمة your تحولها إلى كلمة my.
- ٣- إذا كان في السؤال كلمة you تحولها إلى كلمة I.

• يأتي السؤال كالتالي:

Write an email of about **TWENTY FOUR (24)** words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب إيميل من ٢٤ كلمة عن:

Your city, Alexandria

clean - beautiful places

To your friend Mona to tell her about your **city Alexandria**. Your name is Rasha and your email address is **rasha.13@gmail.com** and your friend's email address is **mona29@yahoo.com**.

New Message		-	/	×
To	1 إيميل المرسل اليه ...	Cc	Bcc	
From	2 إيميل الراسل ...			
Subject	3 موضوع الرسالة ...			
<p>4 Dear / Hi اسم المرسل اليه (Mona),</p> <p>5 جملة افتتاحية I'm happy to write to you.</p> <p>6 موضوع الإيميل I want to tell you about my city Alexandria. I live in Alexandria with my family in a big house. In the summer we go to the beach. It's clean and there are beautiful places to visit.</p> <p>7 جملة ختامية See you soon.</p> <p>8 تحية الخاتمة Yours / Love اسم الراسل (Rasha)</p>				
<p>Send</p>				

إذا لم يكن بالسؤال عنوان البريد الإلكتروني الخاص بك وبصديقك
اكتب اسم صديقك في To: واسمك في From:

لاحظ

Lesson

1

Let's remember!

1 What can you see in the photo? Look and say:

ماذا ترى في الصورة ؟ انظر وقل :




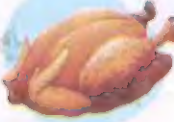


2 Read and match the questions and answers:

اقرأ ثم صل السؤال بإجابته:

- | | |
|--------------------------------|--|
| 1 How tall is the Cairo Tower? | a. I visited the bazaar. I bought a bag. |
| 2 What would you like? | b. It's 187 meters. |
| 3 Where are you from? | c. It's on January 19th. |
| 4 What did you do yesterday? | d. I'm from China. I'm Chinese. |
| 5 How long is the Sphinx? | e. It's seventy-three meters long. |
| 6 When's your birthday? | f. I'd like some water, please. |

3 Look and write. What is the mystery word in yellow?

انظر واكتب ما هي كلمة السر المظلمة باللون الأصفر؟

1		2			1	b	r	e	a	d
					2					
					3					
3		4			4					
				5						
5		6			6					
7		8			8					
9					9					

The mystery word is: -----

4 Look and write:

انظر واكتب:

bread, cereals and potatoes - fruit and vegetables
milk and dairy products - meat and fish - sugar and fats



5 What is a healthy diet? Look and say:

ما هو النظام الغذائي الصحي؟ انظر وقل:

1 Read and order:

اقرأ ورتب:

April

February

June

October

August

January

March

September

December

July

May

November

2 Listen, answer and write:

استمع واجب واكتب:

Tapescript

نص الاستماع

استمع إلى الإجابة



1- What's the weather like?

2- Where's he from?

3- What do you drink for breakfast?

4- What did you buy?

5- How much is it?

6- What is it?

7- What's it made of?

8- How much money do you have?

1



It's sunny.

2



3



4



5



6



7



8



3 Write about your weekend. You can use the words below:

اكتب عن عطلة نهاية الاسبوع الخاصة بك. يمكنك استخدام الكلمات التي بالاسفل:

go - see - buy - have

I went shopping last weekend. I

I

I had a great time!



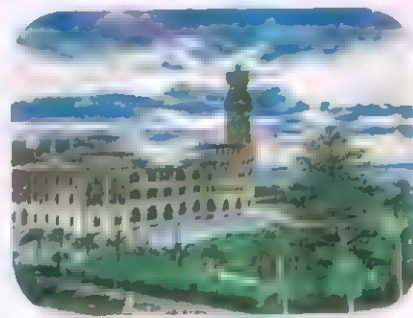
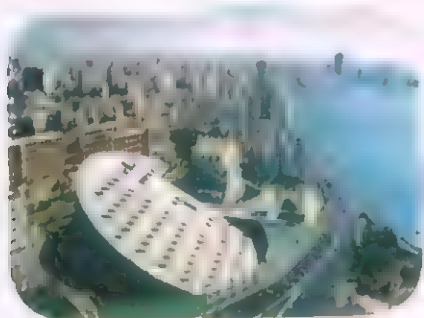
4 Read and add the correct capital letters:

اقرأ واضف الحروف الكبيرة في مكانها الصحيح :

hi! I'm shorouk! i live in alexandria. the library of alexandria

is a big and famous library in my city. yesterday it was sunny.

my family visited the park at the montaza palace.



Fourth Year Primary

2023 - 2024

Specification for Fourth year primary

مواصفات الصف الرابع الابتدائي ٢٠٢٣ - ٢٠٢٤

Marks:30

Time: One hour and a half

A- Listening (4 Marks)

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False): (4 Marks)

A listening text of about FORTY (40) words followed by FOUR (4) separate sentences is provided. Learners are asked to write T (True) or F (False) for each sentence based on what they have heard. (One mark each)

B- Reading (15 Marks)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (4 Marks)

Learners are given FOUR (4) MCQs (2 vocabulary & 2 structures) based on the Set Books. They are asked to choose the correct answer from the FOUR (4) options given. (One mark each)

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (3 Marks)

An unseen text from FIFTY (50) to SIXTY (60) words with THREE (3) deletions is provided. A list of FOUR (4) separate words related to vocabulary is also given. Learners are asked to complete each deletion in the text with ONE of the FOUR (4) words given in the box. The first sentence should be written in full. (One mark each)

4 Read and match (A) with (B): (4 Marks)

FOUR (4) premises in column (A) and FIVE (5) responses in column (B) are provided. Learners are asked to match each premise with its suitable response. The items can be jobs and descriptions, sentence halves, words and definitions.... etc. (One mark each)

5 Read the text and answer the questions: (4 Marks)

An unseen literary or informational text from **SEVENTY (70)** to **EIGHTY (80)** words is provided. The text should be at the appropriate difficulty level for **Primary Four**. Learners are asked to answer:

A. TWO (2) MCQ questions with FOUR (4) options each dealing with TWO of the following reading comprehension skills:

- Identify the general idea of the text.
- Demonstrate understanding of specific details in a text.
- Determine the meaning of words and phrases in a text. (One mark each)

B. TWO (2) open ended questions dealing with TWO of the following reading comprehension skills:

- Describe the relationship between two people, events, ideas, or pieces of information in a text.
- Make logical inferences from the text.
- Summarize the key supporting details and ideas in a text. (One mark each)

C- Writing (11 Marks)

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: (6 Marks)

THREE (3) scrambled statements (sentences and questions) with **SIX (6)** words each are provided. Learners are asked to order the words to form a correct sentence or question. (Two marks each)

7 Punctuate the following: (1 Mark)

A simple statement (sentence or question) of about **SIX (6)** words with **TWO (2)** missing punctuation marks is provided (**Capital letter / Full Stop / Question Mark / Exclamation Mark / Comma**). Learners are asked to punctuate them correctly. (Half a mark each)

8 Write a paragraph /email of about TWENTY FOUR (24) words using the following guiding elements: (4 Marks)

Learners are asked to write a paragraph or an email of not less than **TWENTY FOUR (24)** words using **TWO (2)** given guiding elements that can be words, questions, fact file... etc.

Theme

1

Unit

1

I feel good.

أشعر أنا بخير

I discover myself

لنطق
الكلمات الجديدة التي
أعلاها علامة نجمة
أنظر آخر الوحدة

Objectives of the Unit أهداف الوحدة

1. Listen, read, research, and write about foods and how to keep healthy.

- يستمع الطالب ويقرأ ويقوم بعمل بحث ويكتب عن أنواع الطعام المختلفة وكيف يحافظ على صحته.

2. Practice making sentences with **and** or **but**.

- يتدرب الطالب على تكوين جمل باستخدام (و) أو (لكن).

3. Read and listen to a Chinese fable.

- يقرأ الطالب ويستمع إلى أسطورة خرافية صينية.

4. Distinguish long and short vowels.

- يفرق الطالب بين الأصوات المتحركة الممتدة والقصيرة.

5. Talk about a place in Egypt.

- يتكلم الطالب عن مكان في مصر.

6. Research and make a presentation.

- يقوم الطالب بعمل بحث وعرض تقديمي.

LESSON

1

Food and drink

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:

tomato
ثمرة طماطمrice*
أرزchicken
دجاجة / لحم دجاجpotato
ثمرة بطاطسonion*
بصلة

Food and drink

الطعام
والشربmango
ثمرة مانجوbanana
موزةgrapes
عنبwatermelon
بطيخةsugarcane
قصب السكرmilk
لبنMeals
الوجباتbreakfast
الافطارlunch
الغداءdinner
العشاء

Other words

كلمات أخرى

ready	جاهز
vegetables	خضراوات
fruit	فاكهة
special food	طعام مميز
What else?	ماذا أيضًا؟
yum = yummy	لذيذ

delicious	لذيذ
country	دولة
healthy	صحي
Egyptian	مصري
farmers	فلاحين / مزارعين

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع

produce	يتج
raise	يربي (للحيوانات)
look	يدو

Past ماضٍ

produced
raised
looked

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع

grow	يزرع
make	يعد الطعام
eat	يأكل
keep	يربي (حيوانات)
feed	يطعم
think	يعتقد

Past ماضٍ

grew
made
ate
kept
fed
thought

Definition

raise يربي : To keep and feed chickens to get eggs and meat.

Language Functions

وظائف لغوية

-It looks delicious./ Yum / Yummy.

-Let's eat.

Let's + inf. مصدر الفعل

للاقتراح
لنستخدم

Grammar

قواعد لغوية

- عند جمع الأسماء نضيف آخر الاسم حرف (s):
- banana → bananas onion → onions
- الأسماء التي تنتهي بالحروف (ch / sh / ss / o / s / x) يضاف آخرها (es) عند الجمع:
- mango → mangoes potato → potatoes
- هناك أسماء لا تجمع مثل بعض الأطعمة وكل المشروبات:
- كلمة (chicken) لا تجمع لو كنا نقصد لحم الدجاج وتجمع لو اشرنا إلى الدجاج الحي.

Study the following

- 1 Lunch is ready. - الغداء جاهز.
- 2 I made some special food for us. - أعدت طعام خاص لنا.
- 3 The food looks delicious. - يبدو الطعام شهى.
- 4 Which food comes from our country? - أى طعام يأتي من بلادنا؟
- 5 We grow rice in Egypt. - نزرع الأرز في مصر.
- 6 We raise chickens in Egypt. - نحن نربي الدجاج في مصر.
- 7 Egyptian farmers produce many things. - يُنتج الفلاحون المصريون أشياء عديدة.
- 8 What meal are they having? - ما الوجبة التي يأكلونها؟

1 Listen and read: Where are Mom and Maged? استمع واقرأ. أين الأم وماجد؟

Mom : Lunch is ready. I made some special food for us.

Maged : Mom, it looks delicious!

Mom : Which food comes from our country, do you think?

Maged : I think we grow rice in Egypt.

Mom : Yes, that's right. What else?

Maged : Hmmm, I think we raise chickens in Egypt.

Mom : Yes, and tomatoes and onions. Egyptian farmers produce many things you see on this table. Let's eat!

Maged : Yum!

استمع إلى النص:



Mom and Maged



2 Listen again and answer the questions:

استمع للنص السابق مرة أخرى واجب عن الأسئلة.

1. What meal are they having?

- a** breakfast **b** lunch **c** dinner

2. What do Egyptian farmers produce?

- a** fruit and vegetables **b** chickens **c** both a and b

3. Maged thinks that Egyptian food is

- a** healthy **b** yummy **c** both a and b

3 Look and write:

انظر واكتب:

bananas - chicken - grapes - mangoes - milk
onions - potatoes - rice - sugarcane - watermelon

1



chicken

2



grapes

3



milk

4



onions

5



rice

6



Potatoes

7



bananas

8



Mangoes

9



sugarcane

10



Watermelon

4 Listen, check, and say:

استمع إلى الكلمات في (Exercise 3) وتأكد من قول.

Find out



What other animals do farmers raise in Egypt?
ما الحيوانات الأخرى التي يربّيها المزارعون في مصر؟

Egyptian farmers raise chickens and sheep.

Did you know?

هل تعلم؟

Did you know that in Japan you can buy a watermelon that looks like a pyramid?

هل تعلم أن اليابان تستطيع أن تشتري بطيخة على شكل هرم؟

Activities



1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False): استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

True False

1 Farmers are good for our country.



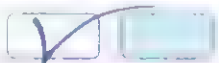
2 Farmers grow onions and carrots.



3 Farmers raise lions in Egypt.



4 There are healthy food in Egypt.



2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Let's eat our lunch.

a eats b eat c eating d ate

2. We raise to get meat.

a chickens b onions c tomatoes d trees

3. Egyptian farmers rice in Egypt.

a raise b grow c think d play

4. A: meal are they having? B: Lunch.

a When b Where c Who d What

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

things - animals - ready - produce

Egyptian farmers are important in our country. They our food. They grow many They can keep many They can raise chickens, too.

ساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة. Help your child deal with such questions.

Lesson 1

اقرأ وصل:

4 Read and match (A) with (B):

1 Egyptian farmers

2 The food

3 They are

4 We grow

a. chickens in Egypt.

b. looks delicious.

c. rice in Egypt.

d. produce many things.

e. having lunch.

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. lunch - ready - Our - is.

our

2. raise - chickens - in - We - Egypt.

We

3. grow - Egypt - Farmers - in - rice.

Farmers

4. from - food - country - Which - comes - our?

Which

6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

what animals do farmers raise in Egypt

7 Write a paragraph of TWENTY FOUR (24) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٢٤) كلمة عن:

Healthy food

مجاب عنه آخر الوحدة

vegetables - chicken

I am healthy

استمع إلى المفردات:



play football
يلعب كرة القدم



play basketball
يلعب كرة السلة



drink water
يشرب مياه



exercise
يتمرن

Healthy
صحي



eat vegetables
ياكل خضراوات

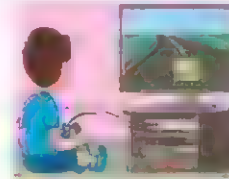


drink cola
يشرب كولا

Unhealthy
غير صحي



eat candy
ياكل حلوى



play video games
يلعب ألعاب الفيديو

Other words كلمات أخرى

on the weekend	في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع	busy	مشغول
really	بالفعل	scientist	عالم
different	مختلف	plants	نباتات
awesome	رائع	interesting	شيق
milkshake	مخفوق اللبن	burger	سندوتش برجر
wheelchair	كرسي متحرك	salads	سلطة
basketball	كرة السلة	week	أسبوع

ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم عن الأشياء الصحية وغير الصحية. Help your child learn about healthy and unhealthy things.

Conjugation of verbs مريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع

practice يمارس
talk يتكلم
look at ينظر إلى
walk يمشي

Past ماضٍ

practiced
talked
looked at
walked

Present مضارع

do يفعل
drink يشرب

Past ماضٍ

did
drank

Grammar

قواعد لغوية

نستخدم (and) بمعنى (و) للربط بين جملتين أو اسمين أو صفتين لهما نفس الفكرة أي أنها تضيف للمعنى.

And
/ But لكن

- I play tennis and basketball.
- I like fruit and vegetables.

ونستخدم (but) بمعنى (لكن) للربط بين جملتين أو صفتين بينهما تناقض أو بين جملة مثبتة وأخرى منفية.

- I don't eat candy, but I like fruit.
- The desert is very interesting, but it is very hot.

Study the following

- 1 Do you think you're healthy? هل تعتقد أنك بصحة جيدة؟
- 2 I do a lot of sport at school. أمارس أنواع كثيرة من الرياضة في المدرسة.
- 3 I don't eat candy, but I like fruit. لا أتناول الحلوى لكنني أحب الفاكهة.
- 4 I'm in a wheelchair basketball team. أنا في فريق كرة السلة للكراسي المتحركة.
- 5 I drink cola, but I want to drink more water. أشرب المياه الغازية (الكولا) لكنني أريد شرب الكثير من الماء.
- 6 Dad is a scientist and he likes looking at animals and plants. أبي عالم وهو يحب أن ينظر إلى الحيوانات والنباتات.
- 7 The desert is very interesting, but it is very hot. الصحراء شيقة جداً لكنها حارة جداً.
- 8 I want something sweet. أريد شيء ما فيه سكريات.
- 9 I don't play video games because I'm very busy. لا أعب ألعاب الفيديو لأنني مشغول جداً.

1 Listen to Adam, Dareen, and Judy talking about being healthy. Label the photos:

استمع إلى (آدم ودارين وجودي) حيث يتكلموا حول أن تكون بصحة جيدة. وضع الاسم تحت الصورة.

Tapescript

نص الاستماع

استمع إلى النص



Narrator : 1

Interviewer : Do you think you're healthy, Judy?

Judy : Yes, I do. I do a lot of sport⁽¹⁾ at school. On the weekend⁽²⁾, I walk to my grandma's house with my family. I really like walking because I can talk to my mom and dad. We can see the different houses⁽³⁾ and shops. I don't eat candy, but I like fruit. My favorite fruits are bananas and watermelon. My mom makes an awesome⁽⁴⁾ banana milkshake⁽⁵⁾!

Narrator : 2

Interviewer : Do you think you're healthy, Adam?

Adam : Yes, I'm in a wheelchair basketball team⁽⁶⁾ at school. We practice three times⁽⁷⁾ every week. I drink cola, but I want to drink more water. I don't play video games because I'm very busy. I play basketball in the park.

Narrator : 3

Interviewer : Do you think you're healthy, Dareen?

Dareen : Yes, I think I'm healthy. My mom and I go walking in the desert with my dad. Dad is a scientist⁽⁸⁾ and he likes looking at animals and plants. We go with him every weekend. It's very interesting, but it's very hot sometimes⁽⁹⁾! I only⁽¹⁰⁾ drink water because I don't like cola. I love burgers, but I only eat one a week. My mom makes yummy salads.

Arabic Meaning

- ١- رياضة
- ٢- في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع
- ٣- منازل مختلفة
- ٤- رائق
- ٥- مخفوق اللبن
- ٦- فريق كرة السلة
- للكراسي المتحركة
- ٧- ثلاث مرات
- ٨- عالم
- ٩- أحيانا
- ١٠- فقط

1



Judy

2



3



2 Listen again and answer the questions:

استمع للنص السابق مرة أخرى واجب عن الأسئلة :

1. Who never drinks cola?

2. Who plays basketball?

3. Who doesn't eat candy?

3 Listen again and complete the sentences with (and) or (but):

استمع للنص السابق مرة أخرى وأكمل الجمل باستخدام (و) أو (لكن):

1. I don't eat candy, I eat fruit when I want something sweet.

2. I don't drink cola other unhealthy drinks.

3. I play basketball I play football in the park.

4. Dad is a scientist he likes looking at animals and plants.

5. It's a very interesting place, it's very hot sometimes!

Help your child listen and answer the questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويجيب عن الأسئلة.

Activities



Lesson 2

اقرأ وصل:

3 Read and match (A) with (B):

<p>A</p> <p>1 I drink water,</p> <p>2 I practice</p> <p>3 My mom makes</p> <p>4 Who doesn't</p>	<p>B</p> <p>a basketball.</p> <p>b eat candy?</p> <p>c but I don't drink cola.</p> <p>d play video games.</p> <p>e an awesome banana milkshake.</p>
--	--

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. don't - I - candy - eat.

2. in - football - the park - I - play.

3. think - you - healthy - Do - you are?

4. hot - very - It's - desert - in - the.

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. what healthy things do you do

2. my mom makes yummy salads

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. I like chocolate ice cream.

a but b and c so d that

2. My dad is Egyptian, his dad is French.

a because b so c but d of

3. I don't eat candy, I like fruit.

a and b but c to d on

4. I practice basketball football.

a and b under c but d because

5. I want to play football, I'm ill.

a and b because c to d but

6. I eat vegetables I exercise.

a but b and c on d of

7. Waleed speaks English, he can't speak Chinese.

a but b because c and d to

8. My dad is a scientist he likes looking at animals and plants.

a to b and c but d of

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

but - healthy - drink - eats

My name is Soha. I like sports. I want to be ①, so I play football and basketball. I ② cola, ③ I want to drink more water. I walk home from school every day.

The empty pot: A folktale from China Pronunciation and Math

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات،



emperor امبراطور



palace قصر



king ملك



gardener بستاني



China الصين



honest أمين



competition مسابقة



seeds بذور



empty pot
أصيص زرع فارغ

Other words

كلمات أخرى

folktale

أسطورة خرافية

important man

رجل مهم

nothing

لا شيء

someone

شخص ما

next

القادم

honesty

الأمانة

dead

ميت

everyone

كل شخص / الجميع

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع

live	يعيش
work	يعمل
water	يسقى
plant	يزرع

Past ماضٍ

lived
worked
watered
planted

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع

say	يقول
take	يأخذ
grow	ينمو
put	يضع

Past ماضٍ

said
took
grew
put

Help your child learn new words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم كلمات جديدة.

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع

happen	يحدث
try	يحاول
look after	يعتني بـ
lie	يكذب

Past ماضٍ

happened
tried
looked after
lied

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع

bring	يحضر
give	يعطي
win	يفوز
lose	يخسر

Past ماضٍ

brought
gave
won
lost

Delimiting

emperor

امبراطور

someone who is like a king

شخص مثل الملك

palace

قصر

a place where an emperor lives

مكان يعيش الأمبراطور فيه

honest

أمين

someone doesn't lie

شخص لا يكذب

Study the following

- The most important man in China was the emperor.
كان الأمبراطور أهم رجل في الصين.
- He lived in a beautiful palace.
عاش في قصر جميل.
- There will be a competition.
سوف تكون هناك مسابقة.
- I will give a seed to each gardener.
سوف أعطي بذرة لكل بستاني.
- Cheng was very good at growing things and looking after his garden.
كان تشن جيداً في زراعة الأشياء والأهتمام بحديقته.
- He put the seed in the sun and gave it water.
وضع البذرة في الشمس واعطاها المياه.
- The seeds I gave everyone were dead.
البذور التي اعطيتها لكل شخص كان ميتة.
- You will be the next emperor.
سوف تكون الامبراطور القادم.
- Honesty is more important than winning.
الأمانة أهم من الفوز.

LESSON

3

The empty pot: A folktale from China Pronunciation and Math

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات،



emperor امبراطور



palace قصر



king ملك



gardener بستاني



China الصين



honest أمين



competition مسابقة



seeds بذور

empty pot
اصيص زرع فارغ

Other words

كلمات اخرى

folktale

أسطورة خرافية

important man

رجل مهم

nothing

لا شيء

someone

شخص ما

next

القادم

honesty

الأمانة

dead

ميت

everyone

كل شخص / الجميع

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الافعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع

live	يعيش
work	يعمل
water	يسقى
plant	يزرع

Past ماضٍ

lived
worked
watered
planted

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع

say	يقول
take	يأخذ
grow	ينمو
put	يضع

Past ماضٍ

said
took
grew
put

Help your child learn new words.

ساعد طفلك ان يتعلم كلمات جديدة.

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع

happen	يحدث
try	يحاول
look after	يعتني بـ
lie	يكذب

Past ماضٍ

happened
tried
looked after
lied

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع

bring	يحضر
give	يعطي
win	يفوز
lose	يخسر

Past ماضٍ

brought
gave
won
lost

Study the following

- 1 The most important man in China was the emperor.
- كان الأمبراطور أهم رجل في الصين.
- 2 He lived in a beautiful palace.
- عاش في قصر جميل.
- 3 There will be a competition.
- سوف تكون هناك مسابقة.
- 4 I will give a seed to each gardener.
- سوف اعطي بذرة لكل بستاني.
- 5 Cheng was very good at growing things and looking after his garden.
- كان تشن جيذاً في زراعة الأشياء والاهتمام بحديقته.
- 6 He put the seed in the sun and gave it water.
- وضع البذرة في الشمس واعطاها المياه.
- 7 The seeds I gave everyone were dead.
- البذور التي اعطيها لكل شخص كان ميتة.
- 8 You will be the next emperor.
- سوف تكون الامبراطور القادم.
- 9 Honesty is more important than winning.
- الأمانة أهم من الفوز.

1 Read and listen. Where did Cheng live?

اقرأ واستمع. أين عاش تشن؟

The Empty Pot: A Folktale from China!

استمع إلى النص.



Cheng lived long ago in China. The most important man in China was the emperor⁽¹⁾. He lived in a beautiful palace⁽²⁾. One day the emperor said, "There will be a competition⁽³⁾. I will give a seed to each gardener⁽⁴⁾. The one who can grow the most beautiful plant from the seed will be the next emperor."



"Take the pot and the seed. Plant it." says the emperor. "Make it grow into a beautiful plant. Then bring the plant back to me."

Cheng was very good at growing things and looking after⁽⁵⁾ his garden. He put the seed in the sun and gave it water. But nothing⁽⁶⁾ happened. Cheng tried for weeks but no plant grew. The other gardeners had plants that grew.

At the palace, all the gardeners have beautiful plants.

"Where is your plant?" the emperor asks Cheng.

"I worked very hard. I watered it every day," says Cheng. "But it didn't grow."

"Then you win!" says the emperor. "The seeds I gave everyone⁽⁷⁾ were dead. The seeds cannot grow. Only you are good and honest⁽⁹⁾. So you will be the next emperor⁽¹⁰⁾!"

Arabic Meaning

١- امبراطور

٢- قصر

٣- مسابقة

٤- سستاني

٥- الإعتناء بـ

٦- لا شيء

٧- كل شخص

٨- ميتة

٩- أمين

١٠- القادم

2 Circle the correct meaning:

ضع دائرة حول المعنى الصحيح:

1. An emperor is someone who is like a

- a king b farmer

2. A palace is where an emperor

- a travels b lives

3. Someone who is honest

- a does not lie b lies

4. In a competition someone tries to

- a win b lose

3 Read again and answer T (True) or F (False):

اقرأ النص السابق مرة أخرى واجب بـ (صح) أم (خطأ):

True False

① Cheng was good at growing things.

☐ True ☐ False

② Cheng didn't like being in his garden.

☐ True ☐ False

③ The emperor gave all the gardeners a seed to plant.

☐ True ☐ False

④ Cheng's seed grew into a big, beautiful flower.

☐ True ☐ False

⑤ Cheng looked after the seed, and gave it sun and water.

☐ True ☐ False

⑥ Cheng was sad and took the empty pot to the emperor.

☐ True ☐ False

⑦ Cheng wasn't the next emperor as his seed didn't grow.

☐ True ☐ False

4 What is the moral of this story?

ما الدرس الأخلاقي للقصة؟

a Winning is very important.

الفوز مهم جدًا.

b Honesty is more important than winning.

الأمانة أهم من الفوز.

c Everyone should plant a seed.

يجب أن يزرع كل شخص بذرة.



Pronunciation

- ندرس في هذا الدرس الاصوات المتحركة القصيرة والممتدة.

- الاصوات القصيرة غالباً تحتوى على حرف متحرك واحد (bag / pen / mix / mom / bus)

- الاصوات الممتدة تحتوى على صوتين متحركين (cake / feet / rice / nose / blue)

استمع إلى النص:



mom ام



bag حقيبة

Short
vowels



mix يخلط

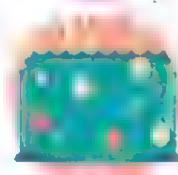


rice أرز



nose أنف

Long
vowels



cake تورتة

اصوات قصيرة

bag

mom

mix

اصوات ممتدة

cake

nose

rice

- ندرس أيضاً البادئة (re) التي تأتي أول الفعل بمعنى يعيد عمل.

البادئة (re) تعني مرة أخرى Prefix (re) means again

redo

يعيد فعل/يجدد

repaint

يعيد دهان

reclean

يعيد تنظيف

remake

يعيد عمل

Help your child learn about short and long vowels.

ساعد طفلك ان يتعلم عن الاصوات المتحركة القصيرة والممتدة.

1 Look at the pictures and complete the words:

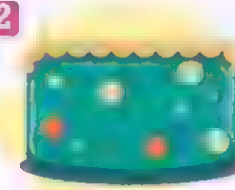
انظر إلى الصور واكمل الكلمات:

1



b _ g

2



c _ k _

3



m _ m

4



n _ s _

5



m _ x

6



r _ c _

2 Read and change the verbs with "re": (re) اقرأ وغير الافعال باستخدام البادئة (re):

The prefix "re" means "again".

The seeds didn't grow. Cheng wanted to replant them.

⚡ لاحظ (again) تعني مرة أخرى ولاعادة كتابة الجمل نحذف again ونضع (re) قبل الفعل.

1. Ramez painted his house again. He repainted his house

2. Nada cleaned her bike again. She recleaned her bike

3. The chef made rice again.

4. Shaimaa did her homework again.



Comparing large digits / Ascending order

مقارنة الأعداد الكبيرة / الترتيب التصاعدي

- Bassem wants to be healthy, so he walks 178,880 meters a day.

يريد باسم أن يكون بصحة جيدة، لذلك هو يمشي ١٧٨,٨٨٠ متر كل يوم.

نتعلم أولاً العلامات الرياضية حيث: (=) تعنى يساوى / (<) تعنى أصغر من / (>) تعنى أكبر من.

- ندرس في هذا الدرس مقارنة الأعداد الكبيرة كمايلي:

١. بشكل عام العدد الذى به ارقام أكثر هو العدد الأكبر.

53,978

100,000

نلاحظ هنا أن العدد (100,000) يتكون من (6) أرقام والعدد (53,978) يتكون من (5) أرقام إذا العدد الأكبر هو (100,000).

٢. إذا تساوى العددين نقارن أول رقم بالعدد الأول مع أول رقم بالعدد الآخر (مقارنة الرقم يكون من اليسار إلى اليمين).

612,345

512,345

هنا تساوى العددين فى عدد الأرقام. نبدأ المقارنة من أول رقم ونلاحظ أن $5 < 6$ إذا 612,345 هو العدد الأكبر.

835,497

835,597

- عند مقارنة العددين نلاحظ تساوى أول ثلاثة أرقام (835) لكن $5 > 4$ إذا العدد 835,597 هو الأكبر.

الترتيب التصاعدي Ascending order

هو ترتيب الأعداد من الصغير إلى الكبير كما تعلمنا فى الفقرة السابقة نحدد من هو العدد الصغير والكبير ثم نرتب من أصغر عدد إلى أكبر عدد. قارن الآتى:

87,909 - 87,092 - 87,990

87,092 < 87,909 < 87,990

Help your child learn about comparing large digits and ascending order.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم عن مقارنة الأعداد الكبيرة والترتيب التصاعدي.

1 Look and say:

انظر وقل:

544,432

five hundred, forty-four thousand, and four hundred thirty-two

178,880

one hundred, seventy-eight thousand and eight hundred and eighty

2 Put the correct sign (>, <, or =):

ضع العلامة الصحيحة (>, <, أو =):

1 655,534

<

698,881

2 10,000,000

ten million

3 100,000,000

99,999,999

3 Arrange these numbers in ascending order:

رتب الأرقام ترتيب تصاعدي:

1 87,909 - 87,092 - 87,990

2 233,346 - 10,009 - 20,665

3 20,000 - 20,310 - 19,311

Find out



The numerical digits we use today 1, 2 and 3 are based on the Hindu-Arabic numeral system. This system was developed over 1000 years ago. Can you find the smallest five-digit number?

إن الأعداد التى نستخدمها حالياً (1, 2, 3) مأخوذة من نظام العدد الهندى العربى. تطور هذا النظام عبر ١٠٠٠ عام مضت. هل تستطيع معرفة أصغر عدد يتكون من خمسة أرقام؟

Activities

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- The emperor lived in a beautiful
 a desert b garden c school d palace
- We our homework.
 a recycled b redid c repainted d recleaned
- A/An is someone who looks after gardens.
 a scientist b emperor c gardener d king
- We put the in the pot to grow.
 a seeds b water c food d candy

2 Read and match (A) with (B):

A

- Cheng lived long
- My friend tries
- Cheng was good
- The emperor gave a seed

B

- to all the gardeners.
- to win in a competition.
- ago in China.
- at growing things.
- He tries to win.

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. was - Cheng - honest - and - good.

2. a - be - There - competition - will.

3. watered - I - every - the plants - day.

4. more - winning - Honesty - than - is - important.

4 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. where's your plant

2. all the seeds cannot grow

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

LESSON

4

Writing

Vocabulary

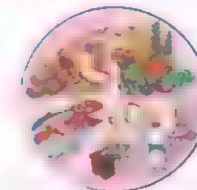
استمع إلى المفردات:



wheat قمح



Damietta governorate محافظة دمياط



nutrients عناصر غذائية



rice أرز



tomato ثمرة طماطم



potato ثمرة بطاطس



guava ثمرة جوافة



lemons ليمون



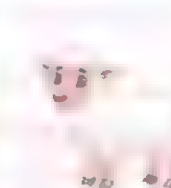
grapes عنب



fisherman صياد



farmer فلاح



sheep خروف



cow بقرة



goat معزة

1,000

thousand

الف

1,000,000

million

مليون

Domiat cheese جبنة دمياط

Other Words

كلمات أخرى

land

الأرض

rich

غني

catch (fish)

يصطاد سمك

famous

مشهور

part

جزء

crops

محاصيل

less than

أقل من

Help your child learn about Damietta governorate.

ساعد طفلك ان يتعلم عن محافظة دمياط.

Study the following

- 1 The land in Damietta governorate is rich in nutrients.
- الأرض في محافظة دمياط غنية بالعناصر الغذائية.
- 2 Fishermen catch thousands of fish in the sea.
- يصطاد الصيادون آلاف الأسماك من البحر.
- 3 Cows, goats and sheep live in Damietta governorate, too.
- يعيش البقر والماعز والخراف في محافظة دمياط أيضًا.
- 4 Domiati cheese is very famous.
- الجبنة الدمياطي مشهورة جدًا.
- 5 Life is good in Damietta.
- الحياة رائعة في دمياط.

Food from Damietta

The land in Damietta governorate is rich in nutrients. The farmers can grow rice, tomatoes, potatoes, wheat, lemons, grapes, and guavas.

Fishermen catch thousands of fish in the sea. Cows, goats and sheep live in Damietta governorate, too. Domiati cheese is very famous. About one and a half million people live in this part of Egypt. Life is good in Damietta!

استمع إلى النص:



1 Read again and answer T (True) or F (False):

اقرأ النص السابق مرة أخرى واجب بـ (صح) أم (خطأ).

	True	False
1 Damietta has lots of food and animals.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
2 The farmers grow a lot of fruit and vegetables.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
3 The land in Damietta is not good for crops.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
4 There aren't many lemons and grapes in Damietta.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
5 Less than two million people live in Damietta.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

2 Read the text and join the sentence halves:

اقرأ النص واربط النصف الجمل بنهايتها:

- | | |
|---|---|
| A <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1 Damietta is famous 2 The animals you see 3 The farmers grow 4 About 1.5 million Egyptians | B <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. live in Damietta governorate. b. tomatoes, potatoes, wheat, lemons, and guavas. c. for Domiati cheese. d. in Damietta are goats, cows and sheep. |
|---|---|

Activities

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

famous - potatoes - thousands - live

Damietta is a good place to live in. Farmers can grow many things there. They are rice, tomatoes and Fishermen catch of fish. You can eat Domiati cheese. It's very

2 Read and match (A) with (B):

اقرأ وصل:

- | | |
|---|---|
| A <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1 Life is 2 Fishermen catch thousands 3 Domiati cheese is very 4 One and a half million | B <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. people live in Damietta. b. famous. c. good in Damietta. d. of fish. e. nutrients |
|---|---|

Help your child deal with such questions. يساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Unit 1 I feel good

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. famous - What's - for - Damietta?

2. rich - The - in - land - is - nutrients.

3. farmers - in - What - produce - do - Damietta?

4 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

you can see animals in Damietta

5 Write an email of TWENTY FOUR (24) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب إيميل من (٢٤) كلمة عن:

Damietta governorate

grow - cheese

- To your friend Bahaa to tell him about Damietta governorate. Your name is Youssef and your email address is youssef@gmail.com. and your friend's email address is bahaa@yahoo.com

New Message

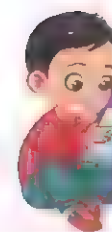
To

From

Subject

Dear

Yours,



Review

Food and drink

الطعام والشراب



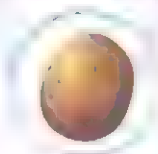
tomato
ثمرة طماطم



rice
أرز



chicken
دجاجة / لحم دجاج



potato
ثمرة بطاطس



onion
بصلة



mango
ثمرة مانجو



banana
موزة



grapes
عنب



watermelon
بطيخة



sugarcane
قصب السكر



milk
لبن

Meals

الوجبات



breakfast
الافطار



lunch
الغداء



dinner
العشاء

Healthy

صحي



play football
يلعب كرة القدم



play basketball
يلعب كرة السلة



drink water
يشرب مياه



exercise
يتمرن



eat vegetables
يأكل خضراوات

Unhealthy

غير صحي



drink cola
يشرب كولا



eat candy
يأكل حلوى



play video games
يلعب ألعاب الفيديو

A folktale from China أسطورة خرافية من الصين



emperor امبراطور



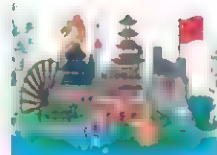
palace قصر



king ملك



gardener بستاني



China الصين



honest أمين



competition مسابقة



seeds بذور



empty pot ابيض زرع فارغ

Writing



Damietta governorate

محافضة دمياط



guava

جوافة



lemons

ليمون



wheat

قمح



fisherman صياد



farmer فلاح



sheep خروف



cow بقرة



goat معزة

Grammar

قواعد لغوية

● نستخدم (and) بمعنى (و) للربط بين جملتين أو اسمين أو صفتين لهما نفس الفكرة أي انها تضيف للمعنى:

-I like fruit and vegetables.

● نستخدم (but) بمعنى (لكن) للربط بين جملتين أو صفتين بينهما تناقض أو بين جملة مثبتة وأخرى منفية:

-I don't eat candy, but I like fruit.

نشاطات على نطق بعض الكلمات

- نقدم في هذه الفقرة ارشادات تقرب بقدر الإمكان نطق الكلمات بشكل صحيح والتركيز على الأخطاء الشائعة في النطق

ويُفضل سماع الكلمات من خاصية (QR code) الموجودة بالكتاب .

1 نطق كلمة (rice) انطق الحرف (c) مثل حرف (s) لأنه جاء بعده حرف (e).

2 نطق كلمة (onion) بشكل صحيح انطق الحرف (o) الأول مثل نطق حرف (u) في كلمة (bus) وانطق حرف

(i) مثل نطق حرف (y) في كلمة (yes) وحرف (o) الثاني مثل نطق حرف (o) في كلمة second.

3 نطق كلمة (special) انطق الحروف (cia) مثل حرف (ش) باللغة العربية.

4 نطق كلمة (delicious) انطق الحروف (ciou) مثل حرف (ش) باللغة العربية.

5 نطق كلمة (Egyptian) انطق الحروف (tian) مثل حرف (شن) باللغة العربية.



Write a paragraph / an email of
TWENTY FOUR (24) words.

Answers to Paragraphs / Emails

Lesson 1

Healthy food

- 1 I like healthy food. I always eat vegetables and fruit. Mom cooks healthy meals. She cooks chicken and rice for lunch. We eat bananas and grapes for dessert.

Lesson 2

Damietta governorate

2

New Message			
To	bahaa@yahoo.com	Cc	Bcc
From	youssef@gmail.com		
Subject	Damietta governorate		

Dear Bahaa,

How are you? I'd like to tell you about my city, Damietta. I live in Damietta with my family. Farmers grow rice, tomatoes and potatoes. Fishermen catch thousands of fish in the sea. Domiati cheese is famous. Life is good in Damietta.

See you soon.

Yours,
Youssef

Activity - Unit 1

Your favorite meal

- 3 My favorite meal is lunch. My mother cooks chicken and rice. I eat fruit like watermelon, bananas and grapes, too. They are healthy food.

Al-Azhar Exercises

الأسئلة الخاصة بالأزهر الشريف

A- Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

استمع وأختار:



1. Dad is a (teacher - doctor - scientist)
2. The desert is very (warm - hot - cold)

B- Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialog:

اقرأ وأكمل:

vegetables - do - healthy

- A : Do you like food?
- B : Yes, I
- A : What healthy food do you like?
- B : Fruit and

C- Reading Comprehension

3 Read and choose the correct answer:

اقرأ واختر:

My father is a good farmer. He has a big farm. He grows tomatoes, potatoes, bananas, watermelons and wheat. He keeps a cow, a horse and a donkey. He raises chickens to get eggs.

Choose the correct answer:

1. My father is a (farmer - doctor - fisherman)
2. My father's farm is (big - small - old)
3. My father wheat. (keeps - feeds - grows)
4. My father keeps a (cat - cow - dog)
5. My father raises (chickens - birds - ducks)

D- Vocabulary and Structures

4 Choose the right answer from a, b, or c:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة

1. He plays football tennis.

- a but b so c and

2. Farmers chickens to get eggs and meat.

- a eat b raise c grow

3. Nabil washes the rice, he can't cook it.

- a for b but c so

4. We need to grow plants.

- a apples b sugar c seeds

5. Domiati cheese is very

- a tall b wrong c famous

E- Writing

5 Rearrange the words to make correct sentences:

اعد لترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. her - Hoda - repainted - bike.2. dead - The - were - seeds.3. grow - in - We - rice - Egypt.4. many - You - Egypt - can - in - crops - see.

6 Write a paragraph of Four (4) sentences about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من أربع جمل عن:

Unhealthy food



Activity

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False): استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

True False

1 I read the folktale from India.

2 Cheng was an honest gardener.

3 The emperor gave plants to Cheng.

4 Cheng was the first emperor.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Farmers rice in Egypt.

- a grow b play c visit d draw

2. We try to in the competition.

- a lose b lie c win d grow

3. I don't like candy, I like fruit.

- a and b but c to d too

4. It's very in the desert.

- a hot b tall c high d slow

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

famous - catch - life - grow

Alexandria is a beautiful city ① is good there. The sea in alexandria is ② Fishermen come to the sea to ③ thousands of fish then, they sell the fish at the market.

4 Read and match (A) with (B):

اقرأ وصل:

1 Do you think

2 I want to play football.

3 Which food comes

4 Farmers

a. grow rice in Egypt.

b. from our country?

c. but my leg hurts.

d. you are healthy?

e. special food.

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

Unit 1 I feel good

5 Read the following and answer the questions: أقرأ الآتي ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

My name is Ahmed Samy. I like chicken and mangoes. I like drinking sugarcane juice. My brother Magdy likes rice and potatoes. We go to school by bus. We do our homework at seven o'clock. Then, we play with my cousin Adham at eight o'clock. We have dinner at 9 o'clock in the evening.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The underlined word "We" refers to
 a Ahmed and Samy b Ahmed and Magdy
 c Ahmed and Adel d Ahmed and Adham
- They have dinner at o'clock.
 a eight b nine c seven d ten

B. Answer the following questions:

- How do Ahmed and Magdy go to school?

- Who likes chicken and mangoes?

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

- redid - We - homework - our.
- grow - Farmers - rice - tomatoes - and.
- healthy - do - What - you - do - things?

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

we raise chickens in Egypt

8 Write a paragraph of TWENTY FOUR (24) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٢٤) كلمة عن:

Your favorite meal

مجاوب عنه آخر الوحدة

- What's your favorite meal?
- When do you eat it?

Theme

1

Unit

2

Desert Animals

حيوانات صحراوية

I discover myself

لنطق
الكلمات الجديدة التي
أعلاها علامة نجمة
أنظر آخر الوحدة



Objectives of the Unit أهداف الوحدة

- Listen, read, research, and write about desert animals.
- يستمع الطالب ويقرأ ويقوم بعمل بحث ويكتب عن الحيوانات الصحراوية.
- Practice making comparisons.
- يتدرب الطالب على عمل مقارنات.
- Listen to a short story.
- يستمع الطالب إلى قصة قصيرة.
- Learn about the difference between the /p/ and /b/ sounds.
- يتعلم الطالب عن الفرق بين صوتي /b/ and /p/.
- Describe two animals.
- يصف الطالب اثنين من الحيوانات.
- Write a fact file.
- يكتب الطالب ملف حقائق.
- Research and make a poster.
- يقوم الطالب بعمل بحث ويوستر.



Animals in Egypt

استمع إلى المفردات:



Key vocabulary



fennec fox ثعلب الصحراء



camel جمل



spider عنكبوت



eagle نسر / طائر العقاب



pelican* بجة



snake ثعبان



crocodile تمساح



lizard سحلية



insect حشرة

Other words كلمات أخرى

What about.....?

ماذا عن.....؟

few

قليل

true

صحيح / حقيقي

yes / yeah

نعم

do a very important job

يقوم بعمل هام جداً

OK

حسناً

Adjectives

صفات

huge

ضخم

ugly

قبيح

scary

مخيف / مرعب

scarier

مخيف أكثر

cute

جميل

dangerous

خطير

helpful

مفيد

important

هام

Conjugation of verbs

لصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع

live

يعيش

control يتحكم / يقيد عدد

Past ماضٍ

lived

controlled

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع

think

يعتقد

do

يفعل

Past ماضٍ

thought

did

Study the following

- 1 The crocodile is huge. - التمساح ضخم.
- 2 I think crocodiles are scary. - أعتقد أن التماسيح مخيفة.
- 3 I think the spider is scarier. - أعتقد أن العنكبوت مخيف أكثر.
- 4 The spiders are very helpful. They eat insects. Farmers like spiders. - العناكب مفيدة جداً. إنها تأكل الحشرات ويحبها الفلاحون.
- 5 What about the snake and the crocodile? - ماذا عن الثعبان والتمساح؟
- 6 Animals are all important. - الحيوانات كلها مهمة.
- 7 Animals do a very important job. - الحيوانات تقوم بوظيفة هامة جداً.
- 8 Which animals are dangerous? - أي من الحيوانات خطيرة؟

1 Match the words the pictures:

صل الكلمات بالصورة:

birds

lizards

insects



Unit 2 Desert Animals

2 Listen and read:

استمع وأقرأ:

Mom : Look at all these animals that live in our country.

Sara : Look at the crocodile, it's huge!

Tarek : Huge and scary!

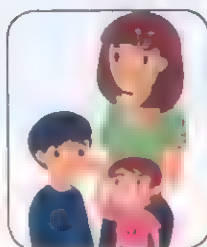
Sara : I think the spider is scarier.

Mom : Yeah, but spiders are very helpful. They eat insects. Farmers like spiders.

Sara : OK, what about the snake and the crocodile? They're dangerous, aren't they?

Mom : Yes, that's true, but they do a very important job. They eat insects, birds and lizards. This controls the number of these small animals. We sometimes think some animals are scary or ugly, but they are all important.

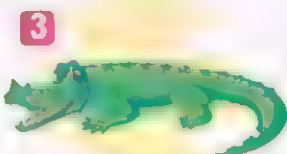
استمع إلى النص:



3 Look and say. Then write :

انظر وقل ثم اكتب:

fennec fox - crocodile - snake - spider - camel



4 Listen again and answer:

استمع للنص السابق مرة أخرى وأجب:

Which animals do Mom, Tarek and Sara not talk about?

Did you know?

هل تعلم؟

The Sahara Desert covers large parts of ten countries in Africa. It is very big, but Antarctica is bigger!

تغطي الصحراء الكبرى أجزاء كبيرة من ١٠ دول في أفريقيا، إنها كبيرة جدًا ولكن القارة القطبية الجنوبية أكبر.

Activities

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False):

استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

True False

1 Crocodiles are scary animals.

☐ True ☐ False

2 Crocodiles are cute animals.

☐ True ☐ False

3 Crocodiles eat meat and fish.

☐ True ☐ False

4 Crocodiles control the number of small animals.

☐ True ☐ False

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Spiders eat

- a birds b insects c fish d snakes

2. Farmers like spiders because they are

- a helpful b scary c huge d high

3. animals are cute?

- a Where b Which c How d When

4. Crocodiles are dangerous, they are important.

- a and b to c but d too

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

lizards - do - scary - fisherman

(البحيرة - النوبارية ٢٠٢٣)

There are a lot of animals in our country. Some animals are 1, but they are important. Snakes and crocodiles are dangerous, but they 2 a very important job. They eat insects and 3 This controls the number of these small animals.

Unit 2 Desert Animals

4 Read and match (A) with (B):

اقرأ وصل:

A

1 The eagle and pelican

2 Crocodiles are

3 Animals

4 Farmers like

B

a. huge.

b. and crocodiles eat?

c. are important.

d. spiders.

e. are birds.

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

اعد لترتيب الكلمات للكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. eat – Spiders → insects.

(المنيا - العنودة ٢٠٢٣)

2. animals – Which – dangerous – are?

3. think – crocodiles – scary – I – are.

4. about – What – snakes – crocodiles – and?

(البحيرة - دمنهور ٢٠٢٣)

6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للاتي:

i think spiders are very helpful

(السيد - عديم ٢٠٢٣)

7 Write a paragraph of TWENTY FOUR (24) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٢٤) كلمة عن:

Animals in our country

helpful - dangerous

Lesson

2

★ Amazing desert animals

Vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



flat feet أقدام مسطحة



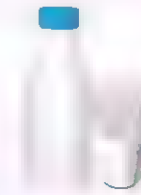
camel

جمل



fur

فرو



milk

لبن



sand

رمل



mouse

فار



horse

حصان



elephant

فيل

Adjectives

الصفات

Long Adjectives

amazing	مدهش
delicious	لذيذ
beautiful	جميل
careful	حريص
perfect	رائع / ممتاز - مناسب جدا
dangerous	خطير

Short Adjectives

noisy	مزعج
strong	قوى
angry	غاضب
old	كبير السن
small	صغير
thin	رفيع
nice	جميل
long	طويل
large	كبير
fast	سريع
slow	بطئ

Other words كلمات أخرى

special way
fresh waterطريقة خاصة
ماء عذبclothes
kphملابس
كيلو متر / ساعة

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع

Past ماضٍ

cross يعبر
carry يحملcrossed
carried

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع

Past ماضٍ

have / has يملك
make يعملhad
made

Study the following

- 1 Camels are beautiful, strong animals. الجمال حيوانات جميلة وقوية.
- 2 They help us to carry things and people to cross the desert. إنها تساعدنا في حمل الأشياء والناس عند عبور الصحراء.
- 3 Their milk is delicious. لبنها لذيذ.
- 4 We can use their fur to make clothes. يمكن استخدام فروها لعمل ملابس.
- 5 Camels are perfect for the desert. الجمال ملائمة جدًا للعيش في الصحراء.
- 6 Camels have large, flat feet so they can walk on the sand. الجمال لديها اقدام كبيرة ومسطحة تمكنها من السير على الرمال.
- 7 Camels can live without water for a long time. يمكن ان تعيش الجمال بدون ماء لفترة طويلة.
- 8 Camels are very noisy and they can get angry. الجمال مزعجة جدًا ويمكن ان ت غضب.
- 9 Horses have large beautiful eyes. الخيول لديها عيون كبيرة وجميلة.
- 10 Horses eat grass and drink fresh water. الخيول تأكل الحشائش وتشرب الماء العذب.
- 11 Horses can live in the desert, but they need people to look after them. يمكن ان تعيش الخيول في الصحراء ولكن تحتاج ان يعتنى بها الناس.

Grammar

قواعد لغوية

Comparative adjectives مقارنة الصفات

نستخدم الصفات لوصف الأشياء. < The mouse is small.

مقارنة شيئين

يمكن أيضاً أن نستخدم الصفات للمقارنة بين شخصين أو شيئين أو حيوانين كالاتي:

أولاً: يجب أن تعلم أن الصفات تنقسم إلى صفات طويلة وصفات قصيرة.

مع الصفات القصيرة نضيف (er) آخر الصفة عند المقارنة:

اسم + er + than + صفة قصيرة + اسم

A mouse is **smaller than** an elephant.

لاحظ

يمكن حذف (than) وحذف آخر اسم إذا تم ذكر الاسم في جملة سابقة كالاتي:

A rabbit is small. I think the mouse is **smaller**. (than the rabbit)

لاحظ

عند إضافة (er) للصفة:

إذا انتهت الصفة بحرف y + حرف ساكن نحذف حرف (y) ونضيف (ier):

scary → scarier heavy → heavier

إذا انتهت الصفة بحرف متحرك + حرف ساكن نضاعف الحرف الساكن:

big → bigger thin → thinner

إذا انتهت الصفة بحرف (e) نضيف (r) فقط:

nice → nicer

نضيف قبل الصفة الطويلة less / more:

beautiful → less / more beautiful

less + صفة طويلة + than

more + صفة طويلة + than

اسم + than + صفة طويلة + less / more + اسم

Eagles are **more beautiful than** insects.

Crocodiles are **more dangerous than** fish.

Camels are **more perfect for the desert than** horses.

لاحظ

لا نستخدم less / more مع الصفات القصيرة ولا نستخدم (er) مع الصفات الطويلة.

1 Read about camels and check your answers. What is surprising about camels?

Camels are **amazing**! They're **beautiful**, strong animals. They help us to carry things and people to **cross** the desert. Their milk is **delicious**. We can use their fur to make clothes!

Camels are **perfect** for the desert. Here's why:

- Camels have large, flat feet so they can walk on the sand.
- Camels can live without water for a long time.
- Camels have special ways to close their noses and eyes to stop the sand from coming in.

- But be careful! Camels are very **noisy** and they can get angry.

2 Look at the fact file and read the differences between horses and camels.

	Horse	Camel
		
How tall is it?	1.4 - 1.8 m	1.8 - 2.0 m
How heavy is it?	380 - 550 kg	400 - 650 kg
How fast is it?	88 kph	65 kph
How long does it live?	25 - 30 years	40 years



Horses have large, beautiful eyes.



Horses eat grass and drink fresh water. Horses can live in the desert, but they need people to look after them.

Help your child read facts about camels and horses

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ حقائق عن الجمال والخيول.

3 Read and answer (True) or (False):

اقرأ وأجب بـ (صح) أو (خطأ).

True False

1 Horses are slower than camels.

2 Camels are taller than horses.

3 Horses are heavier than camels.

4 Camels live longer than horses.

4 Look and complete the table :

انظر وأكمل الجدول.

tall	taller
.....	heavier
fast
.....	bigger
beautiful	more
delicious delicious
.....	shorter

5 Write sentences to compare these animals:

اكتب جمل للمقارنة بين الحيوانات.

1. (snake / fox / dangerous)

A snake is more dangerous than a fox.

2. (elephant / hippo / big)

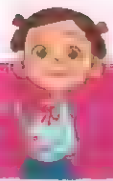
3. (giraffe / horse / tall)

4. (crocodile / fish / dangerous)

5. (camel / fennec fox / small)

6. (ice cream / butter / delicious)

Activities



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- Horses are than camels.
a fast b fastest c faster d as fast
- The horse is shorter the camel.
a than b the c that d then
- Camels are than horses.
a more tall b tall c taller d tallest
- Ice cream is than butter.
a delicious b more delicious
c the delicious d most delicious
- Camels are for the desert than horses.
a perfecter b perfect
c more perfect d as perfect
- The snake is dangerous than the fox.
a more b most c many d least

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

fresh - teeth - grass - large

I like riding horses. They are my favorite animals. They have ① beautiful eyes. They like to eat ② and drink ③ water. They can carry people and other things.

Lesson 2

اقرأ وصل:

3 Read and match (A) with (B):

- | | |
|---|---|
| A
1 Camels are
2 Camels' milk
3 Camels can live
4 Horses like to drink | B
a. than camels.
b. is delicious.
c. fresh water.
d. without water for a long time.
e. perfect for the desert. |
|---|---|

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. have - feet - Camels - large - , flat.

2. taller - A giraffe - is - than - a horse.

3. to make - can - fur - use - We - their - clothes.

4. A mouse - is - than - an - smaller - elephant.

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

camels are perfect for the desert

★ The pelican and the bear

★ Pronunciation and Math

استمع إلى المفردات:



Key vocabulary



pelican بجعة



hungry جوعان



paw* كف الحيوان



bear* دب



claw* مخلب الحيوان



beak منقار



juicy fish سمكة عصرية (طرية)



angry غضبان

Other words كلمات أخرى

Excuse me!

اعذرني!

fun

متعة

surprised

مدهش

scared

خائف

interesting

شيق

boring

ممل

both

كلامهم

sadly

بحزن

Help your child learn new words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم كلمات جديدة.

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع

Past ماض

look at	ينظر إلى
reach	يصل إلى
open	يفتح
lift	يرفع

looked at
reached
opened
lifted

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع

Past ماض

have / has	يملك
feel	يشعر
think	يعتقد
take	ياخذ
say	يقول

had
felt
thought
took
said

Study the following

- 1 The bear reaches for the fish. - يصل الدب إلى السمكة.
- 2 It is ready to take the fish out of the water. - إنه جاهز لياخذ السمكة من الماء.
- 3 The bear is surprised and angry. - الدب مندهش وغضبان.
- 4 The pelican looks scared. - البجعة تبدو خائفة.
- 5 The bear is stronger than the pelican. - الدب أقوى من البجعة.
- 6 How do you feel, pelican? - كيف تشعرى أيتها البجعة.
- 7 But you are hungrier than me. - لكن أنت جائعة أكثر منى.
- 8 You are kinder than all the other bears. - أنت عطوف أكثر من كل الدببة الأخرى.
- 9 Which animal is hungrier? - أى حيوان أكثر جوعاً؟

1 Look at the pictures and say:

انظر إلى الصور وقل:

Describe the bear.

صف الدب

Describe the pelican.

صف البجعة



/p/ pelican



/b/ bear

2 Read and listen. Where is the fish at the end of the story:

اقرأ واستمع. أين السمكة في نهاية القصة؟

The Pelican and the Bear

استمع إلى النص:



A pelican and a bear are in the river. They are very hungry. They are both looking at a big, juicy fish.

The bear reaches for the fish. It lifts its **paw**.

The pelican opens its beak. It is ready to take the fish out of the water. The bear sees the pelican. The pelican sees the bear.

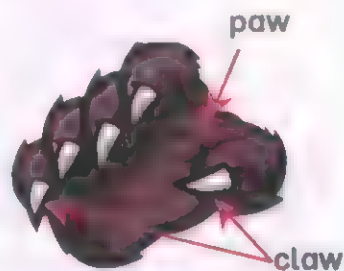
"Excuse me," the pelican says, "that's my fish."

The bear is surprised and angry. "Pelican, look at my **claws**. Now look at my teeth. That's my fish."

The pelican looks scared. "I'm sorry, Bear," it says sadly.

The bear is stronger than the pelican. The bear looks at the pelican.

"How do you feel, pelican?" he asks. "I feel hungry," says Pelican. "I'm bigger and stronger than you," says Bear. "But I think you are hungrier than me. You can have the fish. "Thank you, Bear!" says Pelican. "You are kinder than all the other bears!"



3 Work with a partner. Ask and answer:

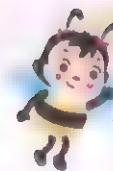
اعمل مع زميلك واسأل واجب:

1. Which animal reaches for the fish first? ما الحيوان الذي وصل للسمكة أولاً؟
2. Which animal is angry? ما الحيوان الغاضب؟
3. Which animal is hungrier? أي حيوان أكثر غضباً؟
4. How do you think the bear feels at the end of the story? كيف تعتقد ما شعره الدب في آخر القصة؟

Help your child read the story and answer the questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ القصة ويجيب عن الاسئلة.

Pronunciation



★ Listen and say:

استمع وقل

/p/ & /b/

ندرس في هذا الدرس نطق حرفي (/b/) و (/p/) والفرق بينهما حيث في حرف (/p/) نضغط على الشفتين بقوة ويندفع الهواء من الفم عند نطق الحرف ولكن في حرف (/b/) لا نضغط على الشفتين مع عدم اندفاع هواء من الفم حيث يشبه حرف (ب) في اللغة العربية.

استمع إلى المفردات:



bee

نحلة



bird

طائر



pelican

بجعة



pear

كمثرى

/b/ words

/p/ words



bear

دب



beak

منقار



peas*

بصلة



pin

دبوس

Help your child know the difference between the /b/ and /p/ sounds.

ساعد طفلك أن يعرف الفرق بين الصوتين /b/ و /p/.

Math

Fractions

الكسور

- الكسر يتكون من جزئين الجزء العلوي يسمى البسط والجزء السفلي يسمى المقام ويوضع بينهما شرطة الكسر،

numerator

البسط

$$\frac{1}{2}$$

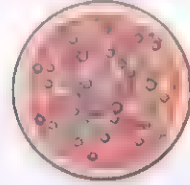
denominator

المقام

- يمكن أن نستخدم الكسور للتعبير عن عدد صحيح وغير صحيح فمثلاً $\frac{4}{2}$ هو كسر يمثل الرقم (2) وهو عدد صحيح و $\frac{1}{2}$ يمثل (0.5) وهو عدد غير صحيح.

ولاحظ التالي:

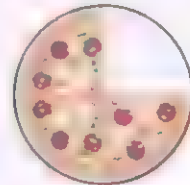
$$\frac{1}{1} = \frac{1}{1}$$



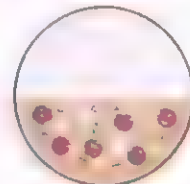
$$1 = \frac{4}{4}$$



$$\frac{3}{4} = \frac{4-1}{4}$$



$$\frac{1}{2} = \frac{2}{4} = \frac{4-2}{4}$$



$$\frac{1}{4} = \frac{4-3}{4}$$



Help your child learn about fractions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم عن الكسور.

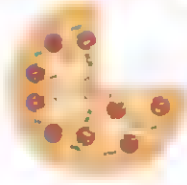
1 Look and put in descending order:

انظر ورتب تنازلي (من الكبير للصغير)

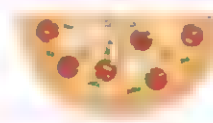
1



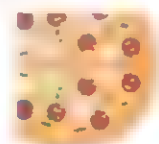
$$\frac{1}{4}$$

☐


$$\frac{3}{4}$$

☐


$$\frac{1}{2}$$

☐


$$\frac{1}{1}$$

Did you know?



We use fractions in everyday life. For example, here's a simple milkshake recipe: $\frac{1}{2}$ a glass of milk, $\frac{1}{4}$ cup of banana, $\frac{1}{4}$ cup of vanilla ice cream.

هل تعلم

◀ نستخدم الكسور في حياتنا اليومية. فعلى سبيل المثال هذه وصفة بسيطة لعمل غفوق اللبن «ميك شيك»: $\frac{1}{2}$ كوب لبن، $\frac{1}{4}$ كوب موز، $\frac{1}{4}$ كوب آيس كريم بالفانيليا.

Activities



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- The bear lifts its
☐ a beak ☐ paw ☐ feather ☐ stomach
- Which animal is, the bear or the pelican?
☐ a strongest ☐ b stronger ☐ c tallest ☐ d the tallest
- A pear is a kind of
☐ a animals ☐ b birds ☐ c fruit ☐ d lizards
- The pelican opens its to eat the fish.
☐ a claw ☐ b beak ☐ c paw ☐ d feather

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

gave - hungry - saw - felt

One day, a pelican saw a big fish in the river. He wanted to eat it. But the pelican
 1 a bear. The bear was 2 and wanted to eat the fish,
 too. The bear was kind. He 3 the fish to the pelican.

3 Read and match (A) with (B):

اقرأ وصل:

- | | |
|---|---|
| <p>A</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> The bear How do you The pelican has Which animal | <p>B</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a big beak. has claws. is angry? feel, pelican? very surprised and angry. |
|---|---|

Lesson 3

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

اعد ترتيب الكلمات للكوين جملاً صحيحة:

- pelican - The - scared - looks.

- animal - is - Which - hungrier?

 (الاسكندرية - المعجمي ٢٠٢٣)
- bear - reaches The - fish - for - the.

- is - than - the - The bear - pelican - stronger.

5 Punctuate the following:

is the pelican really scared

6 Write an email of TWENTY FOUR (24) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب إيميل من (٢٤) كلمة عن:

The pelican and the bear

مجاوب عنه آخر الوجدت

hungry - fish

To your friend Amr to tell him about the story you read yesterday. Your email address is hani@yahoo.com. Your friend's email address is amr@gmail.com

New Message	
To Cc Bcc
From
Subject
Dear,	
.....	
.....	
.....	
.....	
Yours,	
.....	

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



rhim gazelle*
غزال الريم



plants
نباتات



horns
قرون



dolphin
دولفين



mice
فئران



yellow-white coat
صوف اصفر وابيض



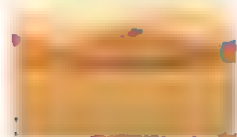
fennec fox
ثعلب الصحراء



grass
عشب / حشائش



leaves
اوراق الشجر



Sahara Desert
الصحراء الكبرى

Other words

كلمات اخرى

North Africa
centimeters
kilogram
during
heat

شمال إفريقيا
مستقيمرات
كيلو جرام
أثناء
حرارة

foxes
around
really
thick fur
warm

ثعالب
حول
بالفعل
فرو سميك
دافئ

Question words

كلمات الاستفهام

Where.....? أين.....?
How heavy.....? كم وزن.....?
Why.....? لماذا.....?
What.....? ما / ماذا.....?

What colors....? ما لون.....?
How tall.....? كم طول رأسي.....?
How long.....? كم طول أفني.....?

Conjugation of verbs

اصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع

Past ماض

Present مضارع

Past ماض

look (beautiful) يبدو (جميل)
protect يحمي
need يحتاج
walk يمشي

looked (beautiful)
protected
needed
walked

keep يحافظ علي
lose يفقد
hear يسمع

kept
lost
heard

Study the following

- 1 Rhim gazelles look very beautiful. - تبدو غزلان الريم جميل جدًا.
- 2 They have big ears and long horns. - لديهم أذان كبيرة وقرون طويلة.
- 3 They have yellow, white coats which, protect them from the sun. - لديهم صوف ابيض واصفر ليحميهم من الشمس.
- 4 The fennec fox lives in the deserts of North Africa. - يعيش ثعلب الصحراء في صحراء شمال افريقيا.
- 5 It's smaller than other foxes. - انه اصغر من الثعالب الأخرى.
- 6 The fennec fox needs big ears to hear insects and small animals. - يحتاج ثعلب الصحراء اذن كبيرة لسمع الحشرات والحيوانات الصغيرة.
- 7 The fennec fox loses heat from its ears. - يفقد ثعلب الصحراء الحرارة من اذنيه.
- 8 The fennec fox's fur keeps it warm. - يحافظ فرو ثعلب الصحراء على دفئه.

Language Functions

وظائف لغوية

ندرس في هذا الدرس بعض الحقائق عن الحيوانات في الصحراء، لذلك يجب معرفة الأسئلة التي من خلالها نتعرف على هؤلاء الحيوانات.

1 Where does it live?

أين يعيش؟

In + المكان.

للإجابة:

Where does the fennec fox live?

In the deserts of North Africa.

2 How tall is it?

.....centimeters.



كم يبلغ طوله ورأسه؟

3 What does it eat?

ماذا يأكل؟

Insects, small lizards and mice.

4 Why does the fennec fox have big ears?

لماذا لدى ثعلب الصحراء أذن كبيرة؟

So it can hear small animals and insects.

5 How heavy is a rhim gazelle?

كم وزنه....؟

About / Around..... kilogram(s).

6 How long is it?

..... meters / centimeters.



كم طوله وأفعى؟.....؟

7 How long does it live?

كم المدة التي يعيشها؟

Around / About years.

Animal fact file:

Rhim gazelle

Rhim gazelles look very beautiful. They live in the Sahara Desert, and they walk around looking for grass, leaves and plants to eat. They have big ears and long horns. They have yellow-white coats which protect them from the sun. Like camels, they don't need to drink a lot of water.



How long is a rhim gazelle's horn?	20 - 30 cm
How heavy is a rhim gazelle?	20 - 30 kg
How long does it live?	about 14 years
What color is its coat?	yellow-white

1 Read the text quickly and answer T (True) or F (False):

اقرأ النص سريعاً وأجب صح أو خطأ.

True False

1 Rhim gazelles live near the sea.

☐ ☐

2 Rhim gazelles eat plants and leaves.

☐ ☐

3 Rhim gazelles have short horns.

☐ ☐

4 Rhim gazelles have dark-colored coats.

☐ ☐

5 Rhim gazelles live for about 14 years.

☐ ☐

2 Think about an animal you like. Make a chart and find out:

فكر في حيوان تحبه. أعمل جدول واكتشف:

1. Write down everything you know about the animal.

2. Think what information you need.

➤ What do they eat?

➤ Where do they live?

➤ How heavy are they?

➤ Why are they special?

Unit 2 Desert Animals

3 Do some research and write what you learned: قم بعمل بحث واكتب ما تعلمته:

K	W	L
What I Know ما أعرفه	What I Want to Know ما أريد أن أعرفه	What I Learned ما تعلمته
Dolphins are not dangerous. They are not fish.		

A poster about an Egyptian desert animal

بوستر عن حيوان صحراوي مصري

4 Work in groups. Think and research: اعمل في مجموعات. فكر وابحث:

- Find an Egyptian desert animal.

فكر في حيوان صحراوي مصري.

- > Where does it live? أين يعيش؟
- > What does it eat? ماذا يأكل؟
- > Why is it special? لماذا هو مميز؟

5 Read and do: اقرأ وافعل:

1. Draw or find some pictures you can use.
2. Make your poster.

The fennec fox:

The fennec fox lives in the deserts of North Africa. It is smaller than other foxes. It is 20 centimeters high. It weighs around 1 kilogram. It is 30 - 40 centimeters long. Its ears are big, really big! The fennec fox needs big ears to hear insects and small animals. The fennec fox eats insects, lizards, and small mice.

During the day, it's hot in the desert. The fennec fox loses heat from its ears. At night it's cold. The fennec fox's thick fur keeps it warm.



Activities

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. The fennec fox's thick keeps it warm.

- a mouth b fur c beak d wing

2. A: How is the rhin gazelle? B: About 20 - 30 kg.

- a long b tall c heavy d high

3. The fennec fox heat from its ears.

- a looks b loses c walks d keeps

4. Rhin gazelles have coats which them from the sun.

- a see b run c protect d drink

2 Read and match (A) with (B):

اقرأ وصل:

A

B

1 How long is

a. not fish.

2 The fennec fox has

b. it special?

3 Why is

c. white-yellow coats.

4 Dolphins are

d. big ears.

e. a rhin gazelle?

Unit 2 Desert Animals

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. smaller – It's – than – foxes – other.

(دمياط – دمياط الجديدة ٢٠٢٣)

2. long – does – How – live – it?

3. dangerous – are – not – Dolphins.

(محافظة الاسكندرية - المنزه ٢٠٢٣)

4. very – look – beautiful – Rhim gazelles.

4 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم:

how long does a rhim gazelle live

5 Write a paragraph of TWENTY FOUR (24) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٢٤) كلمة عن:

مجاب آخر الوحدة

Rhim gazelles

beautiful - horns



Review

Animals, birds and insects حيوانات وطيور وحشرات



fennec fox ثعلب الصحراء



lizard سحلية



spider عنكبوت



eagle طائر العقاب



elephant

فيل



dolphin

دولفين



crocodile

تمساح



pelican

بجعة



camel

جمل



rhim gazelle

غزال الريم



snake

ثعبان



mouse

فار



horse

حصان

Animals body parts اجزاء جسم الحيوان



beak

منقار



fur

فرو



horns

قرون



flat feet

أقدام مسطحة



eye

عين الحصان

قصة قصيرة A short story



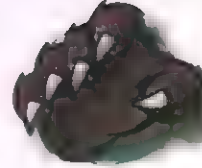
bear
دب



juicy fish
سمكة عصرية



claw
مخلب



paw
كف حيوان

Grammar

قواعد لغوية

Comparative adjectives مقارنة الصفات

- The crocodile is scary.

1 الصفات القصيرة

◀ نضيف (er) آخر الصفة:

اسم + er + than + صفة قصيرة + اسم

- The spider is scarier than the crocodile.

2 الصفات الطويلة

◀ لا نضيف (er) للصفات الطويلة عند المقارنة.

◀ نضيف قبل الصفة الطويلة less / more.

beautiful → less / more beautiful

اسم + more / less + صفة طويلة + than + اسم

- Eagles are more beautiful than insects.

1

نستخدم
الصفات
لوصف
الأسماء

2

يمكن أيضًا أن
نستخدم الصفات
للمقارنة بين
شخصين أو شيئين أو
حيوانين كالأتي

القواعد على نطق بعض الكلمات

1 نطق كلمة (pelican) بشكل صحيح انطق الحرف (a) مثل نطق حرف (o) في كلمة (second).

2 نطق كلمة (fur) انطق حرفي (ur) مثل نطق حرفي (ir) في كلمة (girl).

3 انطق كلمة (bear) وكلمة (pear) مثل نطق كلمة (care) مع اختلاف أول حرف.

4 انطق كلمة (claw) وكلمة (paw) مثل نطق كلمة (draw) مع اختلاف أول حرف.

5 انطق كلمة (pea) مثل نطق كلمة (bee) مع اختلاف أول حرف.

6 في كلمة (rhin gazelle) انطق الجزء (rhin) مثل كلمة (him).

مع عدم نطق حرف (h) لانه (silent) أي انها تنطق (rim) وانطق

(gazelle) بحيث ينطق (a) مثل نطق حرف (o) في كلمة (second).

ولا تنطق حرف (e) الاخير حيث ينطق آخر مقطع (zelle) مثل (zel).



Write a paragraph / an email of
TWENTY FOUR (24) words.

Answers to Paragraphs / Emails

Lesson 1

Animals in our country

- 1 There are many animals in our country. For example, spiders are helpful, they eat insects. Snakes are dangerous, but they eat insects and lizards. These animals are important.

Lesson 2

2

New Message

To amr@gmail.com

Cc Bcc

From hani@yahoo.com

Subject The pelican and the bear

Dear Amr,

How are you? I'd like to tell you about the story I read yesterday. There was a bear and a pelican. They both wanted to eat a fish in the river. But the bear was kinder and gave the fish to the pelican.

See you soon.

Yours,
Hani

Lesson 3

Rhim gazelles

- 3 Rhim gazelles look very beautiful. They live in the Sahara Desert. They eat grass and plants. They have long horns. They don't need to drink a lot of water. They can run very fast.

Activity - Unit 2

The fennec fox

- 4 The fennec fox lives in the desert. It has big ears to hear insects and small animals. It eats insects and lizards. Its thick fur keeps it warm at night.

Al-Azhar Exercises

الأسئلة الخاصة بالأزهر الشريف

A- Listening



1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

استمع وأختار:

1. Horses are very (slow - fast - weak)
2. Horses can live up to years. (thirty - forty - fifty)

B- Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialog:

اقرأ وأكمل:

live - lakes - pelican

- A : Look at this picture. What is this?
B : This is a
A : Where does it?
B : It lives in

C- Reading Comprehension

3 Read and choose the correct answer:

اقرأ واختر:

I live in a small town. My school is next to a big park. My father is a teacher. He is very kind. He teaches English. Students like him very much.

Choose the correct answer:

1. I live in a town. (big - small - tall)
2. My school is next to a big (hospital - farm - park)
3. My father is a (vet - doctor - teacher)
4. My father is very (unkind - kind - bad)
5. My father teaches (English - Arabic - history)

D- Vocabulary and Structures

4 Choose the right answer from a, b, or c: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة

1. A snake is more than a fox.
a cute b slow c dangerous
2. A mouse is than an elephant.
a smaller b very small c smallest
3. Spiders eat
a ice cream b soup c insects
4. A: does the fennec fox live? B: In the deserts.
a When b Where c Why
5. Camels have large feet.
a fur b flat c noisy

E- Writing

5 Rearrange the words to make correct sentences:

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. eat - What - it - does?
.....
2. hungry - are - They - very.
.....
3. eats - small - The pelican - fish.
.....
4. to - need - look after - Horses - people - them.
.....

6 Write a paragraph of Four (4) sentences about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من 4 أربع جمل عن:

Camels



Activity

on Unit

2

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False): استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

- | | True | False |
|---|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1 Camels are weak animals. | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 2 Camels can carry heavy things. | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 3 We can use the camels' fur to make clothes. | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 4 The camels can live without water for a short time. | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Lions are more than giraffes.
a bigger b dangerous c stronger d noisier
2. The fennec fox has ears.
a big b small c little d tiny
3. animals are dangerous?
a When b Which c Who d Where
4. The fennec fox is smaller any other foxes.
a then b than c that d there

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

fresh - fast - eyes - bad

Horses are amazing animals. They are very They have beautiful big They eat grass and they like to drink water. They are shorter than camels.

4 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصل:

- A**
- 1 The camels are very noisy
 - 2 We use fractions
 - 3 A pelican
 - 4 Rhim gazelle has

- B**
- a. long horns.
 - b. in everyday life.
 - c. and they can get angry.
 - d. has a beak.
 - e. foot special?

5 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

My name is Hani. My uncle lives in Fayoum. He has a big farm. He has a lot of animals. I can see cows, hens, goats and horses on the farm. I like horses very much. They aren't dangerous. They are strong animals. I like to feed them. They eat grass and drink fresh water. They can carry heavy things. They are useful.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The underlined word "them" refers to
☐ a goats ☐ b cows ☐ c horses ☐ d hens
- Horses are
☐ a dangerous ☐ b useful ☐ c ugly ☐ d scary

B. Answer the following questions:

- Where does Hani's uncle live?
- What does Hani's uncle have on the farm?

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

- very - Are - dangerous - snakes? (السويس - الأربعين ٢٠٢٣)

- are - perfect - Camels - desert - for - the. (مصر - ٢٠٢٣)

- gazelles - have - Rhim - coats - yellow-white.

7 Punctuate the following:

where does a camel live

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

8 Write a paragraph of TWENTY FOUR (24) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٢٤) كلمة عن:

The fennec fox

ears - fur

مجاوب عنه آخر الوحدة

السويس - حارة غافة ٢٠٢٣

I discover myself

لنطق
الكلمات الجديدة التي
أعلاها علامة نجمة
أنظر آخر الوحدة

Why do we grow plants?

لماذا نزرع النباتات؟



Objectives of the Unit أهداف الوحدة

1. Listen, read, research, and write about plants and how they help us.

- يستمع الطالب ويقرأ ويقوم بعمل بحث ويكتب عن النباتات وكيف تساعدنا.

2. Practice making sentences with the superlative.

- يتدرب الطالب على تكوين جمل باستخدام صيغة التفضيل العليا.

3. Read, listen to, and understand a short story.

- يقرأ الطالب ويستمع إلى قصة قصيرة ويفهمها.

4. Learn about and say words with the consonant blends /sl/ and /sw/.

- يتعلم الطالب ويقول كلمات بها الاصوات الساكنة /sl/ و /sw/.

5. Write the life cycle of a sunflower.

- يكتب الطالب من دورة حياة زهرة عباد الشمس.

6. Research and write a short report.

- يقوم الطالب بعمل بحث ويكتب تقرير قصير.



★ Plants and seeds

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



Other words

balcony*
is called
sunlight

بلكونة
يسمى
ضوء الشمس

inside
awesome*

بالداخل
رائع

Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع

die يموت
plant يزرع

Past ماضٍ

died
planted

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع

grow ينمو / يزرع
find يجد
become يصبح

Past ماضٍ

grew
found
became

Study the following

- 1 Why are the tomatoes green? لماذا تكون الطماطم خضراء؟
- 2 Tomatoes are green before they are red. تكون الطماطم خضراء قبل أن تكون حمراء.
- 3 How do we grow new tomatoes? كيف نزرع نباتات طماطم جديدة؟
- 4 Tomatoes have seeds inside. يوجد بذور داخل الطماطم.
- 5 We plant a seed and the plant grows. نزرع البذرة وينمو النبات.
- 6 We water the plant every day and the roots grow under the soil. نروي النبات كل يوم وينمو الجذر تحت التربة.
- 7 The plant grows flowers and the flowers become tomato fruits. ينمو النبات ليصبح زهور وتصبح الزهور فاكهة الطماطم.

1 Listen and read:

استمع واقرأ:

Dad : Come and look!

Seleem : What is it, Dad?

Dad : Our tomato plants are growing on the balcony! Look, can you see the leaves and the flowers?

Seleem : Oh yes, but why are the tomatoes green?

Dad : Tomatoes are green before they are red.

Seleem : How do we grow new tomatoes?

Dad : Tomatoes have seeds inside. We can take the seeds and grow new tomatoes! We plant a seed and the plant grows. That is called germination. We water the plant every day and the roots grow under the soil. The plant grows flowers and the flowers become tomato fruits.

Seleem : That's awesome! And I found a red tomato! Let's have it for lunch!

Help your child listen and read.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.



2 Listen and say. Then match:

استمع وقل ثم صل:

1 shoot

2 soil

3 root

4 leaf

5 seeds

6 flower

3 Look and complete:

انظر وأكمل:

leaf - roots - seed - shoot - soil

The germination process



لاحظ! إذا انتهى الاسم المفرد بحرف (f) أو (fe) يجمع بحذف حرف (f) أو (fe) وإضافة (ves).

leaf	leaves

4 Listen and check:

استمع وتأكد:

استمع إلى النص الآتي وتأكد من خطوات عملية الإنبات في التمرين رقم ٣.

استمع إلى النص:



Tapescript

نص الاستماع

The Germination process

We put a seed in soil. The seed needs sunlight and water so it can grow. The seed grows roots under the soil. Then it grows a shoot and gets taller above the soil. Finally, the full (الكامل) plant grows leaves and flowers.

Did you know?

Did you know that we eat this cacao seed?
Chocolate comes from this plant.

هل تعلم!

هل تعلم أننا نأكل بذور الكاكاو؟ حيث تأتي الشيكولاتة من هذا النبات.

Activities



1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False): استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

True False

1 Tomatoes are green before they are red.

☐ ☐

2 We water the plant every week.

☐ ☐

3 The roots grow above the soil.

☐ ☐

4 Tomatoes have seeds inside.

☐ ☐

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. The roots grow the soil.

a on b above c under d of

2. There are inside the tomatoes.

a flowers b plants c seeds d trees

3. Tomatoes are before they are red.

a green b yellow c brown d pink

4. We can use the seeds to new tomatoes.

a die b grow c drink d walk

3 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصل:

1 How do we

2 We water

3 Tomatoes have

4 The flowers become

a. the houses.

b. the plants every day.

c. grow new tomatoes?

d. tomato fruits.

e. seeds inside.

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. it - for - Let's - lunch - have.

2. are - Why - green - tomatoes - the?

3. put - We - in - soil - a seed.

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

how do we grow new tomatoes

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Lesson

2

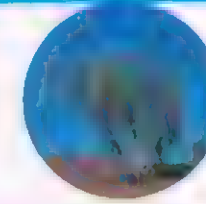
Plants in Egypt

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



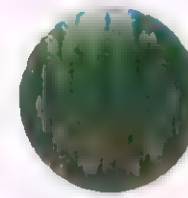
lotus flower زهرة اللوتس



tamarisk نبات الاثل



bean plant نبات الفول



reed* نبات القصب (البوص)



sunflower دوار (عباد) الشمس



rose وردة



acacia* شجرة السنط



orange tree شجرة البرتقال



daisy* زهرة الاقحوان



agricultural* habitat بيئة زراعية



Plant habitats بيئة أو موطن النباتات



desert habitat* بيئة صحراوية



rivers and lakes انهار وبحيرات

Help your child learn about plant habitats.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم عن موطن النباتات.

إذا انتهت الصفة بـ y + حرف ساكن نحذف حرف (y) ونضيف (iest):

heavy → heaviest

إذا انتهت الصفة بحرف ساكن وقبله حرف متحرك نضاعف الحرف الساكن عند إضافة (est):

big → biggest

thin → thinnest

إذا انتهت الصفة بحرف (e) نضيف (st) فقط:

nice → nicest

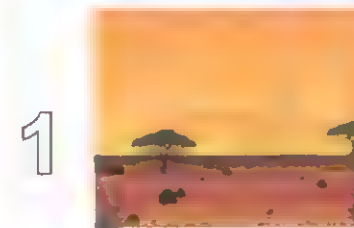
صفات قصيرة	صفات طويلة
tall	beautiful
big	perfect
nice	delicious

ندرس في هذا الدرس الأماكن التي تنمو بها النباتات وما نوع النباتات التي تنمو في كل منطقة:

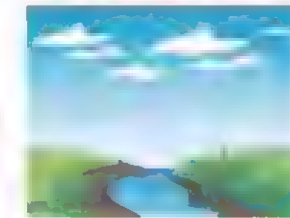
صحراء Desert	بيئة زراعية Agricultural	نهر أو بحيرة River or lake
1- tamarisk نبات الاثل	1- bean plant نبات الفول	1- lotus flower زهرة اللوتس
2- acacia شجرة السنط	2- orange tree شجرة البرتقال	2- reed نبات البوص

1 Read about plant habitats and label the photos:

اقرأ من موطن النباتات وضع اسم كل موطن للنباتات تحت الصورة المناسبة:



1



2



3

• Agricultural habitat

Farmers work here. They grow food for us to eat.

• Rivers and lakes

Plants near rivers and lakes need a lot of water.

• Desert habitat

There is not much rain here. Plants that live in the desert do not need a lot of water.

Unit 3 Why do we grow plants?

Other words كلمات أخرى

maize

ذرة

beetle

خنفسا

suitcase

حقيرة سفر

eggplant

ثمرة باذنجان

butterfly

فراشة

Study the following

1 Farmers grow food for us to eat. - يزرع المزارعون الطعام لنا أكله.

2 Plants near rivers and lakes need a lot of water.

- تحتاج النباتات القريبة من الأنهار والبحيرات إلى كثير من الماء.

3 There is not much rain in the desert. - لا يوجد الكثير من الأمطار في الصحراء.

4 Plants that live in the desert do not need a lot of water.

- لا تحتاج النباتات التي تعيش في الصحراء إلى الكثير من الماء.

5 How big is the flower? - كم حجم الزهرة؟

6 A habitat is a place where living things live and grow.

- بيئة الحيوان أو النبات هي مكان تعيش فيه الكائنات الحية وتنمو.

Grammar

قواعد لغوية

Superlative Adjectives صيغة التفضيل العليا للصفات

ندرس في الوحدة السابقة المقارنة بين شخصين أو شيئين أو حيوانين:

ندرس في هذا الدرس المقارنة بين شخص ومجموعة أشخاص أو شيء ومجموعة أشياء أو حيوان ومجموعة حيوانات.

1 الصفات القصيرة

إذا كانت الصفة قصيرة نضع قبلها (the) وهي آخرها (est):

est + صفة قصيرة + the + الاسم

- The sunflower is the biggest flower.
- Ahmed is tall. Fatma is taller than Ahmed. Karma is taller than Fatma.
- Karma is the tallest.

2 الصفات الطويلة

صفة طويلة + الأقل the least / الأكثر the most + الاسم

- The rose is the most beautiful flower.
- The sunflower is the least beautiful flower.

Help your child learn about superlative adjectives.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم مقارنة الصفات العليا.

2 Where do these plants live? Complete the table:

أين تعيش هذه النباتات؟ اكمل الجدول:



River or lake	Agricultural	Desert
1- lotus flower	3-	5-
2-	4-	6-

3 Look at the fact file and read the differences between the flowers:

أنظر إلى ملف الحقائق واقرأ الفروق بين الزهور:

	daisy	rose	sunflower
How big is the flower?	2.5 - 5 cm	about 6 cm	7.5 - 15 cm
How tall is it?	10 cm	60 cm	1 - 3.5 m
How long does it live?	around 6 days	around 10 days	around 2 weeks
How heavy is it?	around 20 g	around 50 g	around 200 g

4 Read and answer T (True) or F (False):

اقرأ وأجب بنعم أو لا:

True False

1 The rose is smaller than the daisy.

☐ ☐

2 The sunflower is taller than the daisy.

☐ ☐

3 The sunflower is the biggest flower.

☐ ☐

4 The rose lives the longest.

☐ ☐

5 The daisy is the heaviest.

☐ ☐

5 Write sentences to compare these plants and animals:

اكتب الجمل باستخدام صيغة المقارنة للنباتات والحيوانات (استخدم صيغة المقارنة والتفضيل كما في المثال):

1. (cat / snake / fox / scary)

A fox is scarier than a cat. A snake is scarier than a fox. A snake is the scariest animal.

2. (maize / bean / eggplant / delicious)

3. (grape / orange / lemon / big)

4. (bee / beetle / butterfly / beautiful)

Activities



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. A snake is than a fox.

- a small b smallest c smaller d least

2. A reed is the plant.

- a tallest b taller c tall d as tall

3. My city is the place to live in.

- a as nice b nicest c nicer d nice

4. I think a rose is the beautiful flower.

- a more b less c least d as

5. I think the eggplant is the plant.

- a as delicious b most delicious
c less delicious d more delicious

6. A lion is the animal.

- a strong b strongest c stronger d very strong

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

rain - desert - grow - seeds

There are different plant habitats in our world. They are agricultural, rivers and lakes and habitats. In the agricultural habitat, farmers food for us. In the desert, there isn't much and plants don't need much water.

Lesson 2

اقرأ وصل:

3 Read and match (A) with (B):

<p>A</p> <p>1 Plants in the desert</p> <p>2 How long does</p> <p>3 How big</p> <p>4 Plants near rivers</p>	<p>B</p> <p>a. is the flower?</p> <p>b. need a lot of water.</p> <p>c. do not need a lot of water.</p> <p>d. the sunflower live?</p> <p>e. shoot</p>
---	---

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. grow - for - Farmers - food - us.

(أسبوط - البداري ٢٠٢٣)

2. Some - a lot of - need - water - plants.

3. in - isn't - much - There - rain - the desert.

4. beautiful - the - The daisy - flower - is - most.

(البحيرة النوبارية ٢٠٢٣)

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

how heavy is the daisy

6 Write a paragraph of TWENTY FOUR (24) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٢٤) كلمة عن:

Plant

مجاوب عنه آخر الوحدة

rose - beautiful

A short story Math - Pronunciation

Key vocabulary

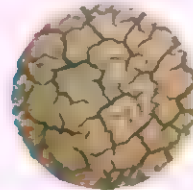
استمع إلى المفردات:



farm مزرعة



land أرض



dry جاف



noise ضوضاء

A short story
قصة قصيرة



liter لتر



rainwater مياه الأمطار

1,000,000

million* مليون

1,000,000,000

billion* مليار

Other words كلمات أخرى

the United States

الولايات المتحدة

polluted air

هواء ملوث

work hard

يعمل بجد

on the farm

في المزرعة

grandparents

أجداد

life

الحياة

proud of

فخور بـ

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع

decide يقرر
live يعيش
plant يزرع
breathe يتنفس

Past ماضٍ

decided
lived
planted
breathed

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع

grow يزرع
take يأخذ
give يعطي

Past ماضٍ

grew
took
gave

Describe a story صف القصة

boring

ممل

interesting

شيق

OK

جيد

I don't understand.

لم أفهم.

Study the following

1 The land was very dry.

- كانت الأرض جافة جدًا.

2 They didn't like the polluted air and the noise.

- لم يحبوا الهواء الملوث والضوضاء.

3 They decided to buy some land.

- قرروا أن يشتروا بعض من الأرض.

4 They used rainwater to water the seeds.

- استخدموا مياه الأمطار ليسقوا البذور.

5 They needed about a billion liters of water a year.

- احتاجوا حوالي مليار لتر من المياه في السنة.

6 They are very proud of Lucas's grandparents.

- هم فخورين جدًا بأجداد لوكاس.

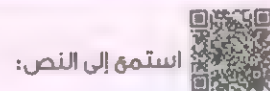
1 Look at the photos. What can you see? What do you think the story is about?

انظر إلى الصور. ماذا ترى؟ وفي رأيك ما الموضوع الذي تدور حوله القصة؟



2 Listen and read:

استمع واقرأ:



استمع إلى النص:

Lucas and his farm

Lucas lives on a farm in the United States. It is a very **special** farm. Forty years ago, the land was very **dry**. There were no farms. No one wanted to live there.

Lucas's grandparents lived in the city, but they didn't like it. They didn't like the **polluted air** and the noise. They wanted to have a farm. They decided to buy some land.

At first, life was very difficult. They worked very hard and they planted **millions** of seeds. They used **rainwater** to water the seeds. They needed about **a billion** liters of water a year.

They grew many fruits like oranges and lemons. They brought animals to the land. They planted trees and flowers.

Today, Lucas lives on the farm with his mom and dad. They are very happy and they have a good life. They are very **proud** of Lucas's grandparents. They used plants to make the land green.

Help your child read a short story.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ قصة قصيرة.



CHIL-MATH

تعرف على الأرقام حتى المليار:

100

a hundred
مائة

1,000

a thousand
الف

10,000

ten thousand
عشرة آلاف

100,000

a hundred thousand
مائة ألف

1,000,000

a million
مليون

100,000,000

a hundred million
مائة مليون

1,000,000,000

a billion
مليار



Place value

ones	tens	hundreds
آحاد	عشرات	مئات
thousands	ten thousands	hundred thousands
آلاف	عشرات الآلاف	مئات الآلاف
millions	ten millions	hundred millions
ملايين	عشرات الملايين	مئات الملايين
billions		
مليارات		

لاحظ

A billion is a thousand million: 1,000,000,000

المليار يساوي ألف مليون.

Unit 3 Why do we grow plants?

ندرس في هذا الدرس القيمة المكانية للأعداد. حيث هناك فرق بين قيمة العدد والقيمة المكانية.
فمثلا العدد (5) قيمته المكانية في الرقم (150) تساوي (50) والعدد (1) قيمته (100).
ندرس الآتي:

ones	آحاد	→	[1-9]
tens	عشرات	→	[10-99]
hundreds	مئات	→	[100-999]
thousands	آلاف	→	[1000-9,999]
ten thousands	عشرات الآلاف	→	[10,000-99,999]
hundred thousands	مئات الآلاف	→	[100,000-999,999]
millions	الملايين	→	[1,000,000-9,999,999]
ten millions	عشرات الملايين	→	[10,000,000-99,999,999]
hundred millions	مئات الملايين	→	[100,000,000-999,999,999]
billions	مليارات	→	[1,000,000,000]

- Egypt wants to plant more than 100 million palm trees across the country. This means we need to plant billions of seeds.

1 Look and label the diagram with the correct numbers:

انظر وضع الكلمات في المكان الصحيح:

billions - hundred millions - hundred thousands - tens - thousands

Large numbers up to billions



2 Read and match:

اقرأ وصل:

- | | |
|--|---|
| <p>A</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1,000,000,000 100,000,000 1,000 100,000 10,000 | <p>B</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. a thousand ten thousand a billion a hundred million a hundred thousand |
|--|---|



Pronunciation

★ Listen and say: استمع وقل

استمع إلى المفردات:





swan بجمعة



swim يعم



slice شريحة



slippers شبشب



sweets حلوى



sweep يكنس



switch مفتاح الكهرباء



sleep ينام

لاحظ نضيف اللاحقة (ful) آخر كثير من الأفعال أو الأسماء لتكوين صفات لتعني (مليء بـ)،

Noun اسم / فعل	Adjective صفة
color لون	colorful زاهي / كثير الألوان
beauty جمال	beautiful جميل
care يعتنى بـ	careful حريص
help يساعد	helpful متعاون
use يستخدم	useful مفيد

Unit 3 Why do we grow plants?

1 Match:

swim

slice

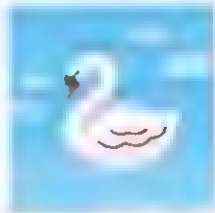
swan

slippers

1



2



3



4



5



6



7



8



sweets

sweep

sleep

switch

2 We use the suffix -ful at the end of many adjectives. It means full of. Find the words in the box. Check the meaning of the words in a dictionary:

نستخدم اللاحقة (ful) آخر كثير من الصفات لتعني (ملء ب) اوجد كلمات في المربع الآتي. تأكد من معاني الكلمات في القاموس.

beautiful

careful

colorful

helpful

useful

s	l	i	h	e	p	y	u	c	m
c	a	r	e	f	u	l	i	o	w
e	s	t	l	r	g	b	w	l	h
d	w	s	p	a	n	r	t	o	t
u	s	e	f	u	l	d	u	r	d
e	h	i	u	s	w	i	t	f	h
u	p	m	l	n	g	e	o	u	b
b	e	a	u	t	i	f	u	l	e

Activities

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. My sister is the floor.

- a swimming b sweeping c sleeping d eating

2. Farmers grow many like oranges and lemons.

- a drinks b vegetables c fruits d animals

3. The are swimming in the river.

- a swans b sweets c slippers d shoes

4. Forty years ago, the land very dry.

- a has b have c is d was

2 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصل:

1 A billion is a

2 They needed a billion

3 A million is a

4 I'm very proud

a. liters of water to water the farm.

b. thousand million.

c. of my grandparents.

d. thousand thousand.

e. worked very hard.

3 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

My grandparents had a farm in Giza. They bought it twenty years ago. They wanted to live in the village because the city was very noisy. They planted many kinds of fruits and vegetables. They kept many animals like cows, goats and sheep.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The grandparents bought the farm years ago.

- a 10 b 20 c 30 d 25

2. The farm was in

- a Cairo b Giza c Luxor d Aswan

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Why did they want to live in the village?

4. What animals did they keep on the farm?

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Unit 3 Why do we grow plants?

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

اعد لترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملًا صحيحة،

(القبوم - إيطا ٢٠٢٣)

1. land - was - The - very - dry.

2. planted - seeds - They - of - millions.

3. lives - a farm - Hisham - in - Egypt - on.

(المنوبة - شيبان الكوم ٢٠٢٣)

4. rainwater - They - to - the seeds - used - water.

5 Punctuate the following:

do you want a slice of pizza

6 Write an email of TWENTY FOUR (24) words using the following guiding elements about:

اكتب إيميل من (٢٤) كلمة عن،

Your uncle's farm

محات عنه آخر الو حدة

1- Where is your uncle's farm?

2- What does your uncle grow?

To your friend Hazem to tell him about your uncle's farm. Your email address is sameh@yahoo.com. Your friend's email address is hazem@gmail.com.

New Message

To: _____ Cc: Bcc: _____

From: _____

Subject: _____

Dear _____,

Yours,

Lessons

4&5

Life cycle of a sunflower

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



root

جذر



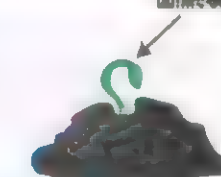
seed

بذرة



soil

تربة



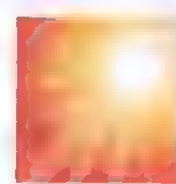
shoot

نبته



sunflower

دوار (عباد) الشمس



sunlight

ضوء الشمس



process

عملية



papyrus*

البردي



Nile Delta

دلتا النيل



paper

ورق



basket

سلة



sandals

صنادل



leaves

ورق الشجر

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

افعال منتظمة

Present مضارع

face يواجه
germinate ينبت
die يموت
drop يرس / يلقى
start يبدأ

Past ماضٍ

faced
germinated
died
dropped
started

Irregular verbs

افعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع

put يضع
grow ينمو
begin يبدأ

Past ماضٍ

put
grew
began

Study the following

1 ندرس في هذا الدرس مراحل نمو (دورة حياة) زهرة عباد الشمس والكلمات المستخدمة في ترتيب عملية ما من البداية للنهاية:

First → Next → After that → Finally
أولاً التالي بعد ذلك أخيراً

- First, you plant the sunflower seed in soil.



- أولاً: نضع بذور عباد الشمس في التربة.

- Next, the seed germinates and it starts to grow roots under the soil.



- ثانياً: تثبت البذور وتبدأ في نمو الجذور تحت التربة.

- After that, the shoot grows above the soil.



- بعد ذلك تنمو النبتة أعلى التربة.

- After about 4 months, the sunflower opens and faces the sun.



- بعد أربعة أشهر تفتح زهرة عباد الشمس وتواجه الشمس.

- Finally, the sunflower dies and drops its seeds.

- أخيراً تموت زهرة عباد الشمس وتسقط بذورها.



2 ندرس أيضاً معلومات عن أهمية نبات مصري وهو البردي:

• Why was papyrus an important plant?

- لماذا كان نبات البردي مهم؟

- Because Ancient Egyptians used it to make paper.

- لأن المصريين القدماء استخدموه لعمل الورق.

- They also made sandals and baskets from papyrus.

- صنعوا أيضاً الصنادل والسلال من البردي.

- Papyrus can help to clean water.

- ساعد البردي في تنظيف الماء.

• What does the plant need?

- ماذا يحتاج النبات؟

- Water, air, soil and sunlight.

- ماء وهواء وتربة وضوء الشمس.

• Where does it live?

- أين يعيش البردي؟

- Near the Nile.

- بالقرب من النيل.



1 Listen and read about the life cycle of a sunflower:

استمع وأقرأ عن دورة حياة زهرة عباد الشمس.

استمع إلى النص:



First, you plant the sunflower seed in soil. You put it in sunlight and water it.



Next, the seed germinates and it starts to grow roots under the soil.



After that, the shoot grows above the soil. It grows leaves. It gets taller.



After about 4 months, the sunflower opens and faces the sun.



Finally, the sunflower dies and drops its seeds. The process begins again.

Unit 3 Why do we grow plants?

2 Order the life cycle of a tomato.

رتب دورة حياة ثمرة الطماطم.



- Finally, the tomato plant dies and drops its seeds. The process begins again.
- After that, the shoot grows above the soil. It grows taller.
- Next, the seed germinates, and it starts to grow roots under the soil.
- First, you plant the tomato seed in soil. You put it in sunlight and water it.
- After a few weeks, the plant grows leaves, flowers and tomatoes.

1

3 Work in groups. Think and research:

اعمل في ثنائيات. فكروا بحث.

A report about a plant

Find an Egyptian plant.

اقرأ التقرير ثم أجب عن الأسئلة.

Papyrus

Papyrus is a very special plant. It is famous because Ancient Egyptians used papyrus to make paper. They also made sandals and baskets from papyrus.



Papyrus needs a lot of water and warm weather to grow quickly. It grows in the Nile Delta near the river.



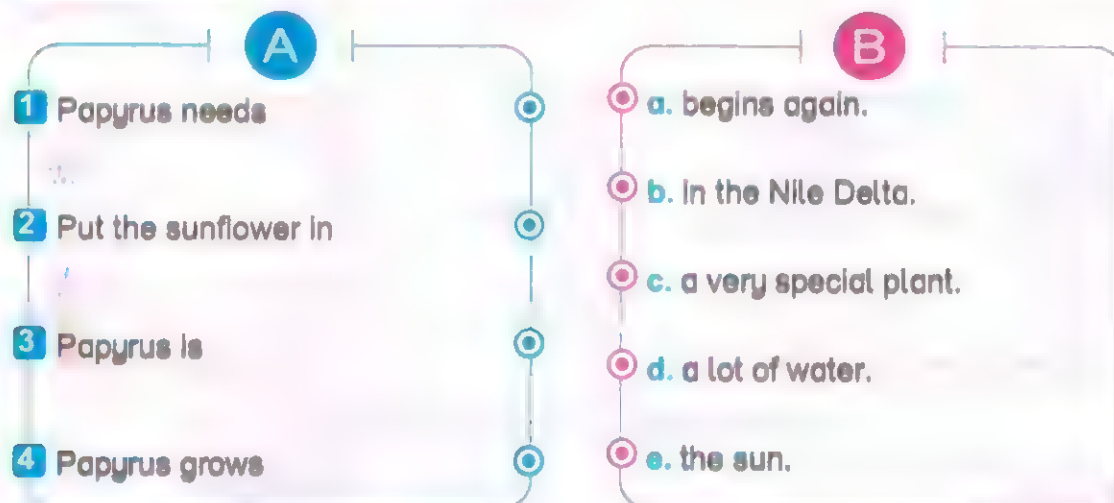
- Why is it an important plant?
- What does the plant need?
- Where does it live?

Activities

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- The sunflower dies and drops its
 a seeds b soil c roots d paper
- Ancient Egyptians made and baskets from papyrus.
 a trains b cars c rocks d sandals
- The plant needs water, soil and
 a fire b sunlight c salt d sugar
- The shoot grows above the
 a soil b sky c sun d star
- Egyptians used papyrus to make
 a metal b plastic c paper d wool

2 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصل.



3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Papyrus is a very special plant that grows in the Nile Delta. It is famous because Ancient Egyptians used it to make paper. They also made sandals and

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Unit 3 Why do we grow plants?

baskets from papyrus. Papyrus needs a lot of water and warm weather to grow quickly. It grows in the Nile Delta near the river.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The Ancient Egyptians used papyrus to make

- a food b paper c clothes d roots

2. The main idea of the passage is about

- a water b gas c papyrus d money

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What is papyrus?

4. Where does it live?

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. put - the seed - You - sunlight - in.

2. special - Papyrus - plant - is - a very.

3. opens - and - The sunflower - faces - the sun.

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. what does papyrus need

2. the shoot grows above the soil



Review

The germination process عملية الانبات



seed

بذرة



water

بروي



shoot / فسيلة / نبتة



soil

تربة



root

جذر النبات



leaf

ورقة شجر



flower

وردة



tomato

ثمرة طماطم

Plants نباتات



lotus flower

زهرة اللوتس



tamarisk

نبات الاثل



bean plant

نبات الفول



reed

نبات القصب



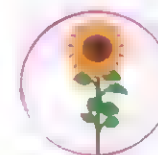
acacia

شجرة السط



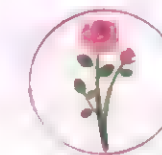
daisy

زهرة الاقحوان



sunflower

عباد الشمس



rose

وردة



orange tree

شجرة البرتقال



papyrus

ورق البردي

A short story قصة قصيرة



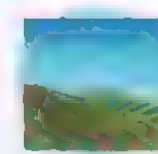
noise

ضوضاء



farm

مزرعة



land

ارض



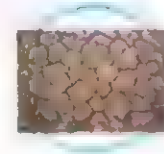
liter

لتر



rainwater

مياه الامطار



dry

جاف

100

a hundred
مائة

1,000

a thousand
الف

10,000

ten thousand
عشرة آلاف

100,000

a hundred thousand
مائة ألف

1,000,000

a million
مليون

100,000,000

a hundred million
مائة مليون

1,000,000,000

a billion
مليار

Grammar

قواعد لغوية

ندرس في هذا الدرس المقارنة بين شخص ومجموعة أشخاص أو شيء ومجموعة أشياء أو حيوان ومجموعة حيوانات.

1 الصفات القصيرة

est + صفة قصيرة + the + الاسم

-The elephant is the biggest animal on land.

2 الصفات الطويلة

the most / least + صفة طويلة + الاسم

-This bird is the least beautiful bird.

-The snake is the most dangerous animal.

Superlative
Adjectives
صيغة التفضيل
العليا للصفات

لاحظ

إذا انتهت الصفة بـ + حرف ساكن نحذف حرف () ونضع ():

heavy → heaviest

إذا انتهت الصفة بحرف متحرك نضاعف الحرف الساكن عند إضافة ():

big → biggest

thin → thinnest

إذا انتهت الصفة بحرف () نضيف () فقط:

nice → nicest

تنبيهات على نطق بعض الكلمات

1 نطق كلمة (balcony) بشكل صحيح انطق حرف (a) كما ينطق في كلمة (man) وانطق حرف (o) كما ينطق في كلمة (second).

2 نطق كلمة (awesome) انطق الحروف (awe) مثل نطق حرفي (oo) في كلمة (door) وانطق حرف (o) في (some) كما ينطق في كلمة (second) ولا تنطق حرف (e).

3 نطق كلمة (shoot) انطق حرفي (oo) كما ينطقان مثل كلمة (moon).

4 في كلمة (agricultural) حرفي (tu) ينطقان مثل (تش) في اللغة العربية.

5 نطق كلمة (habitat) انطق حرفي (a) في أول وآخر الكلمة كما ينطق في كلمة (man).

6 كلمة (reed) تنطق مثل كلمة (seed) تماماً.

7 كلمة (acacia) ينطق حرف (a) الأول مثل (o) في كلمة (second) وحرف

الـ (a) الثاني ينطق مثل حرف (a) في كلمة (make) والمقطع الصوتي (ci) ينطق مثل (ش) في اللغة العربية.

8 في كلمة (daisy) انطق المقطع الصوتي (dai) مثل كلمة (day) وحرف (s) ينطق مثل (z).

9 نطق كلمة (billion) و (million) انطق حرف (l) الأول مثل نطقه في (bin) وحرف (l) الثاني مثل نطق (u) في (yes) وحرف (o) كما ينطق في (second).

10 في كلمة (papyrus) انطق حرفي (u/a) مثل نطق حرف (o) في (second) وانطق (py) مثل نطق (pie) تماماً.



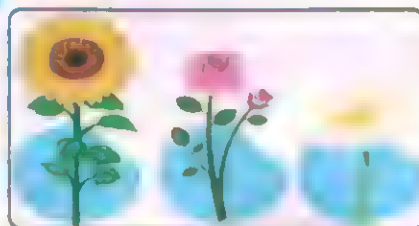
Write a paragraph / an email of
TWENTY FOUR (24) words.

Answers to Paragraphs / Emails

Paragraph 1

Plants

- 1 These plants are beautiful. They are also different. The rose is taller than the daisy. The daisy is colorful. The sunflower is the heaviest.



Email 1

- 2
- | | | | |
|-------------|-----------------|----|-----|
| New Message | | | |
| To | hazem@gmail.com | Cc | Bcc |
| From | sameh@yahoo.com | | |
| Subject | My uncle's farm | | |
- Dear Hazem,
How are you? I want to tell you about my uncle's farm. It's in Sharkia. My uncle grows a lot of plants. He keeps a lot of animals. My uncle raise chickens and ducks, too. I play with the ducks.
Yours,
Sameh

Activity - Unit 3

Sunflowers

- 3 Sunflowers are beautiful. A sunflower faces the sun every day. Farmers grow sunflowers to take their seeds. The seeds of the sunflowers are useful. I like sunflowers.



Al-Azhar Exercises

الأسئلة الخاصة بالأزهر الشريف

A- Listening

- 1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

استمع واختر:

الأسئلة الخاصة بالكتاب



1. Samir is my

(father - brother - friend)

2. He wants to be a

(teacher - doctor - vet)

B- Language Functions

- 2 Read and complete the dialog:

اقرأ وأكمل:

beautiful - this - at

A : Look this plant.

B : What is ?

A : It's a sunflower.

B : Oh! A sunflower. It's

C- Reading Comprehension

- 3 Read and choose the correct answer:

اقرأ واختر:

My friend Salim likes farms and plants. He likes the green color of the leaves. He likes to use the seeds to grow new plants. He waters the plants every day. The roots grow under the soil. My friend Salim becomes very happy when there is a flower.

Choose the correct answer:

1. My friend Salim likes and plants. (towns - villages - farms)

2. My friend Salim likes the color of the leaves.

(green - yellow - red)

3. Salim waters the plants every

(week - day - year)

4. Salim likes to use the seeds to new plants.

(eat - play - grow)

5. The roots grow the soil.

(in - on - under)

D- Vocabulary and Structures

4 Choose the right answer from a, b, or c: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة

1. My city is the place to live in.

- a nice b nicer c nicest

2. I think koshari is the delicious food.

- a more b much c most

3. grow food for us to eat.

- a Teachers b Farmers c Doctors

4. The sunflower is the flower.

- a biggest b big c bigger

5. A: does it live? B: Near the river.

- a Where b What c When

E- Writing

5 Rearrange the words to make correct sentences:

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملًا صحيحة.

1. does - What - need - plant - the?

2. have - inside - Tomatoes - seeds.

3. have - the - I - suitcase - heaviest.

4. grows - near - Papyrus - river - the.

6 Write a paragraph of Four (4) sentences about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من 4 أربع جمل عن:

Your tomato plant



Activity 3

on Unit

3

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False): استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ).

اسمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ).

True False

1 We can grow plants in any habitat.

2 Papyrus doesn't need water.

3 Papyrus grows in the river habitat.

4 Each plant needs its habitat.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. The tomato plant dies and its seeds.

- a opens b gets c drops d grows

2. I think the lion is most dangerous animal.

- a than b the c that d there

3. The plant needs water, and sunlight.

- a money b soil c boll d fire

4. The daisy is the beautiful flower.

- a more b less c most d much

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار.

plants - worked - rainwater - dry

My father is a farmer. When he was thirty years old, he bought some farms. The farms were , but my father very hard and planted a lot of seeds and used to water the seeds. Now, I'm on the farms and we have a lot of crops. I'm proud of my father.

4 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصل.

1 Why are

2 A habitat is a place

3 The butterfly is the

4 Which plants grows

a. don't need a lot of water.

b. In desert habitat?

c. most beautiful insect.

d. plants useful?

e. where living things live and grow.

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع هذه الأسئلة.

Unit 3 Why do we grow plants?

5 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Ahmed lives on a farm near Benha. It's a very special farm. He grows a lot of plants there. He grows maize and gives it to the animals on the farm to feed them. Ahmed grows many fruits like oranges and lemons. Ahmed lives a good life. He is happy because he grows his food himself.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Ahmed grows oranges and
☐ a pears ☐ b lemons ☐ c apples ☐ d peaches
- Ahmed has a farm near
☐ a Benha ☐ b Cairo ☐ c Tanta ☐ d Giza

B- Answer the following questions:

- Why is Ahmed happy?
- What does Ahmed give to the animals?

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

- are - animals - Snakes - scariest - the. اعد لترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة.
- good - Farms - for - land - are - the.
- proud - Lucas - his - was - of - grandparents.

7 Punctuate the following:

I have two black slippers

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

8 Write a paragraph of TWENTY FOUR (24) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إشارية من (٢٤) كلمة عن:

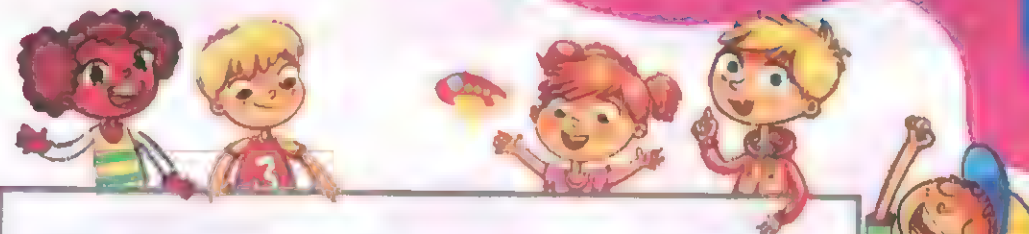
Your tomato plant

beautiful - faces

مجاوب عنه آخر الوحدة

Review

1



Objectives of the Review 1 أهداف المراجعة

Lesson 1: Listening and speaking

- To revise the vocabulary and language from Units 1 - 3.

- يراجع التلاميذ المفردات والقواعد اللغوية الموجودة بالوحدات من ١ إلى ٣.

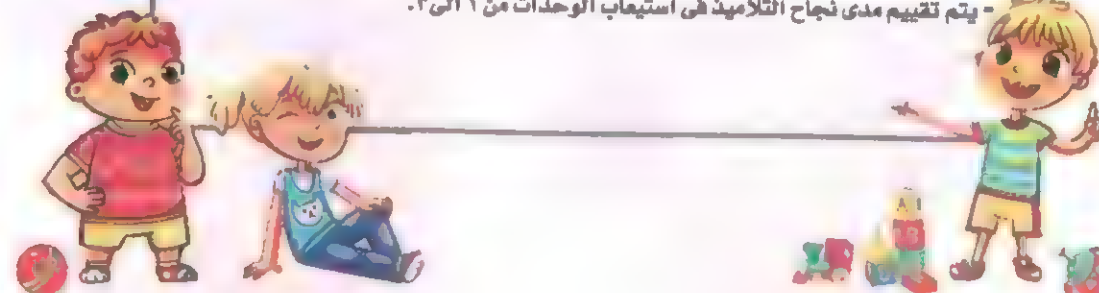
Lesson 2: Phonics and Assessment

1. To revise the key letter sounds from Units 1 - 3.

- يراجع التلاميذ الصوتيات من الوحدات ١ إلى ٣.

2. To evaluate progress in Units 1- 3.

- يتم تقييم مدى نجاح التلاميذ في استيعاب الوحدات من ١ إلى ٣.



1 Listen and write:

استمع واكتب:

استمع إلى المفردات:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

Start



Finish

2 Look and write the words you see. Then match:

انظر واكتب الكلمات التي تراها ثم صل:

1- nose

2- c

3- m

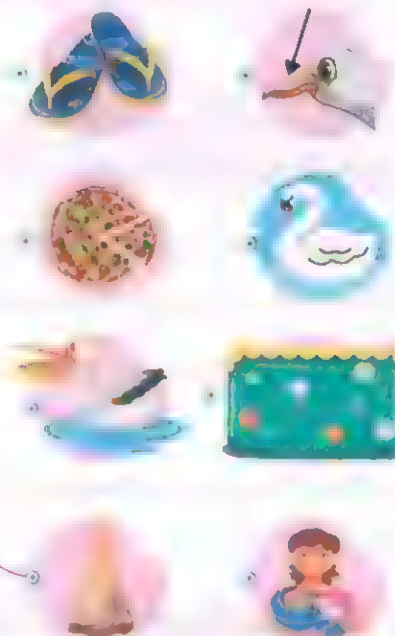
4- s

5- s

6- s

7- p

8- b



3 Complete the sentences with verbs with 're': (re) اكمل الجمل بأفعال تبدأ ب (re)

paint - make - clean - do



1 Today I need toredo.....my homework.



2 The kitchen was clean this morning, but now I need toit.



3 I need to my garden table.



4 I burnt the pancakes - I have tothem.

4 Complete the table:

اكمل الجدول:

1.	taller	the tallest
2. big	2.	3.
3. heavy	4.	the heaviest
5.	6.	the most beautiful
6. delicious	7.	8.

1 Read and write the correct form of the comparative or superlative verb:

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للصيغ المقارنة،

1. I think the cheetah is (fast) animal.

I think the cheetah is the fastest animal.

2. An elephant is (big) than a mouse.

3. I think beans are (delicious) than potatoes.

2 Look and complete with the words in the box: انظر واكمل بكلمات من الاطار:

close - desert - drink - flat - fur - important - milk - sand - strong

I love camels. They

are very ① animals in

Egypt. They are ② and they can carry

people and things across the ③

They are tall animals, with thin legs.

Their ④ is delicious and we can use their ⑤ to

make clothes.

Camels are good animals for the desert because they don't

⑥ a lot of water. Their feet are ⑦ so they can

walk on sand in the desert. They can ⑧ their noses and eyes to

stop the ⑨ from coming in.



1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False): استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):
استمع إلى النص آخر الكتاب،

True False

① Camels can't carry people and things.

② Camels are short animals.

③ Camels have delicious milk.

④ Camels are good for the desert.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. I don't like unhealthy food, I drink cola.

a but b to c so d and

2. The elephant is than the pelican.

a heaviest b heavier c very heavy d tallest

3. Everyone tries to in a competition.

a lose b raise c travel d win

4. People in Egypt rice.

a grow b draw c play d write

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ واكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

opens - yellow - garden - plants

My name's Emad. I like ① very much. I grow many plants in my ② I grow sunflowers, too. The sunflower is a big flower. It's always ③ in color. It's very beautiful and useful.

4 Read and match (A) with (B):

اقرأ وصل:

① The emperor lives

② Dolphins aren't

③ We wash the tomatoes

④ I need to

a. redo my homework.

b. for the desert.

c. in a big palace.

d. dangerous.

e. and cut them into pieces.

5 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص واجب عن الأسئلة:

A habitat is a place where living things live and grow. Each plant lives in a special habitat. We can't grow lotus flowers in desert habitat because they need a lot of water. They grow near lakes or rivers. Farmers need agricultural habitat to grow food for us. The soil in this habitat is good for growing many crops.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The underlined word "this" refers to habitat.
☐ a rivers ☐ b agricultural ☐ c desert ☐ d lakes
- The main idea in the passage is about
☐ a habitats ☐ b houses ☐ c schools ☐ d trains

B. Answer the following questions:

- Why can't we grow lotus flowers in the desert?

- What habitat do farmers need to grow many crops?

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

- doesn't - snakes - Tarek - like.

- do - live - Rhim - Where - gazelles?

- grow - Why - you - plants - do?

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

the sunflower is the biggest flower

8 Write a paragraph of TWENTY FOUR (24) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٢٤) كلمة عن:

Camels and horses

strong - milk

Myself and others

Unit

4

Where do you live?

أين تعيش؟

لنطق
الكلمات الجديدة التي
أعلاها علامة نجمة*
أنظر آخر الوحدة

Objectives of the Unit أهداف الوحدة

1. Listen, read, research, and write about different houses and places in a town.

- يستمع الطالب ويقرأ ويقوم بعمل بحث ويكتب عن أنواع المنازل المختلفة والأماكن في المدينة.

2. Practice making sentences with prepositions.

- يتدرب الطالب على تكوين جمل بها حروف جر.

3. Read and listen to a short story.

- يقرأ الطالب ويستمع إلى قصة قصيرة.

4. Learn about and say words with /f/ and /v/ sounds.

- يتعلم الطالب ويقول كلمات بها الصوتين /f/ و /v/.

5. Write a short article about your village or city.

- يكتب الطالب مقال قصير عن قريته أو مدينته.

6. Research and make a poster.

- يقوم الطالب بعمل بحث ويعمل بوستر.



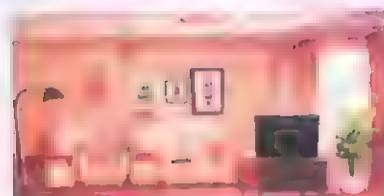
At home

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



bedroom حجرة نوم



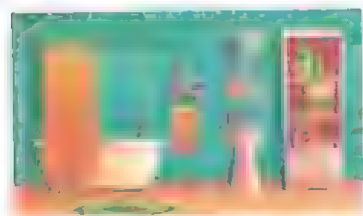
living room حجرة المعيشة



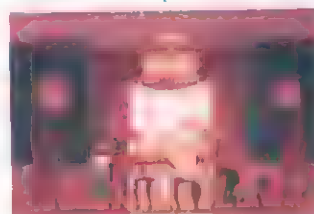
kitchen مطبخ

Inside the house

داخل المنزل



bathroom* حمام



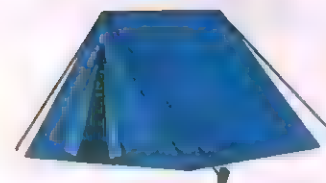
dining* room حجرة الطعام



room حجرة



balcony بلكونة



tent خيمة



house منزل



apartment شقة

Different houses

المنازل المختلفة



houseboat قارب للسكن

Adjectives

lovely

جميل

fantastic

رائع

favorite

مفضل

whole*

بالكامل

Other words

كلمات اخرى

for me

بالنسبة لي

too

جدا / ايضا

cloth

قماش

quietly

بهدهوء

take a shower

يستحم

outside

بالخارج

inside

بالداخل

sounds good

يبدو رائع

building

مبنى

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع

organize

يُرتب

move to (يُعرّّل)

ينتقل إلى

relax

يستريح / يسترخي

Past ماضٍ

organized

moved to

relaxed

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع

do homework

يعمل الواجب المنزلي

see

يرى

sleep

ينام

sit

يجلس

Past ماضٍ

did homework

saw

slept

sat

Help your child learn about different houses.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم عن المنازل المختلفة.

Help your child learn about places inside the house.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم عن الأماكن داخل المنزل.

Can you help me?

Yes, sure. للموافقة: Sorry, I can't. للرفض:

Let's + Inf مصدر الفعل

- Let's do it.

1 طلب المساعدة

2 للإقتراح

3 نتعلم أيضاً الأشكال المختلفة للمنازل وما يميز كل منزل:

house	It is big.	يكون كبير.
apartment	has a balcony	بها بلكونة
tent	made of cloth	تصنع من القماش
houseboat	on the water	يكون على الماء

Study the following

- 1 Look at our lovely new apartment! - انظر إلى شقتنا الجميلة الجديدة!
- 2 Which is your favorite room? - أي حجرة مفضلة لديك؟
- 3 I can see the whole street. - أستطيع أن أرى الشارع بالكامل.
- 4 Can you help me organize the kitchen? - هل يمكن أن تساعدني في ترتيب المطبخ؟
- 5 That sounds good, let's do it! - هذا يبدو رائعاً. هيا نفعليها!
- 6 I take to my family and watch television. - أتكلّم مع عائلتي وأشاهد التلفاز.
- 7 I eat dinner with my family in the dining room. - أتناول العشاء مع عائلتي في غرفة الطعام.
- 8 I take a shower in the bathroom. - استحم في الحمام.

1 Listen and read: Where are Mom and Talia? استمع واقرأ، أين الأم وتاليا؟

Mom: Look at our lovely new apartment!

Talia: It's fantastic!

Mom: Which is your favorite room?

Talia: For me it's my bedroom. I can relax and do my homework quietly.

Mom: My favorite is the living room with the balcony. I can see the whole street!

Talia, can you help me organize the kitchen?

Talia: That sounds good, let's do it!



2 Listen again and answer the questions: استمع مرة أخرى واجب عن الأسئلة:

1- What are they talking about? ١- عن ماذا كانا يتحدثان؟

2- What is Mom's favorite room? Why? ٢- ما الحجرة المفضلة للأم؟ لماذا؟

3 Look and match:

انظر وصل (كما بالمثال):

1- kitchen

c

2- bedroom

a

3- bathroom

b

4- living room

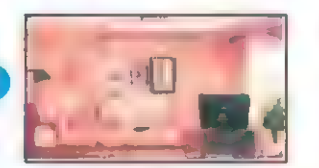
c

5- dining room

d

6- balcony

e



Help your child listen and answer the questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويجيب عن الأسئلة.

4 Listen and write the correct room:

استمع واكتب الحجارة الصحيحة.

Tapescript

نص الاستماع

1- I cook food in this room. It's the

2- I sleep here. It's the

3- I talk to my family and watch television in this room.

4- I take a shower in this room.

5- I love to sit here. I can see the people in the street.

6- I eat dinner with my family here.

5 Look and read. Then read and complete:

انظر واقرأ. ثم اقرأ واكمل.

1. My aunt moved to a new apartment with her family. They are very happy because they have a big balcony.



tent

2. My friend and her family live on a It's small, but she loves living on water.



apartment



house

3. In the desert, some people live in a This home is made of cloth.



houseboat

4. I love living in a because it is a big building. My grandparents live with us. I can play outside with my brother and sister.

Help your child read and complete.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويكمل.

Activities

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False): استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

نص الاستماع

1 Omar lives in a city.

True False

☐ ☐

2 Omar's apartment is very big.

☐ ☐

3 Omar lives with his family.

☐ ☐

4 Omar is a teacher.

☐ ☐

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Some people live in a/an in the desert.

a tent b houseboat c apartment d river

2. Can you me?

a helps b helping c help d helped

3. I live in a I love living on water.

a tent b houseboat c kitchen d desert

4. I sleep in the

a kitchen b bathroom c bedroom d balcony

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ واكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

balcony - clean - favorite - because

Our family moved to a new apartment last week. It's fantastic. My 1 room is the living room with the 2 Yesterday I helped my mom to 3 the kitchen. My sister's favorite room is the bedroom because she can relax and do her homework quietly.

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

Unit 4 Where do you live?

4 Read and match (A) with (B):

اقرأ وصل:

1 I live in a tent,

2 I live in an apartment,

3 We have lunch

4 My aunt moved

a. it has a balcony.

b. to a new house.

c. bedrooms.

d. it is made of cloth.

e. in the dining room.

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. do - Where - you - live?

2. room - What - your - is - favorite?

3. live - us - My - with - grandparents.

4. play - with - I - brother - can - my - outside.

6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

i live in a big house

7 Write a paragraph of TWENTY FOUR (24) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (24) كلمة عن:

مجاوب عنه آخر الوحدة

My bedroom

favorite - sleep

Lesson

2

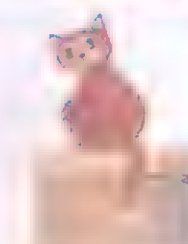
Where is it?

Key vocabulary

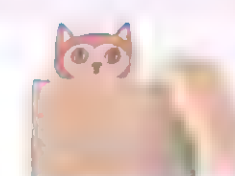
استمع إلى المفردات:



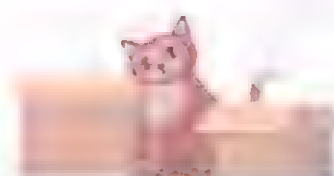
next to بجوار



on على



in في



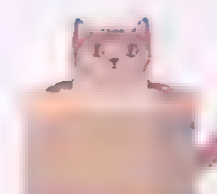
between بين



in front of أمام



under تحت



behind خلف



above فوق / أعلى

Prepositions of place

حروف الجر الخاصة بالمكان



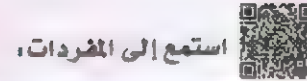
school مدرسة



post office مكتب البريد



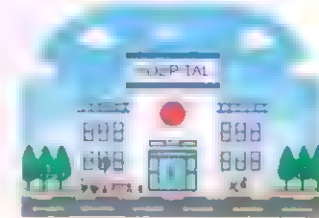
office مكتب



استمع إلى المفردات



supermarket سوبر ماركت

Public places
اماكن عامة


hospital مستشفى



park حديقة عامة



shopping mall* مركز للتسوق



museum متحف

Other words كلمات اخرى

village
letter
the Nile

قرية
خطاب
النيل

couch*
sick

كنبة
مريض

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الافعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع

live يعيش
work يعمل

Past ماضٍ

lived
worked

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع

learn يتعلم
send يرسل
buy يشتري

Past ماضٍ

learnt
sent
bought

Language Functions

وظائف لغوية

Prepositions
of place

نستخدم حروف الجر الخاصة بالمكان لتحديد مكان شيء ما.

- The kitchen is **next to** the living room.
- The cave is **in** the rock.
- My house is **between** the tall house and the tree.

لاحظ الفرق بين (on) و (above) حيث (on) تعني أن الشيء فوق شيء آخر ويكون ملامس له ولكن (above) تعني أن شيء يكون أعلى من شيء ولا يكون ملامس له.

Study the following

- 1 We buy food at the supermarket. - نشترى الطعام من السوبر ماركت.
- 2 We go to hospital when we are sick. - نذهب إلى المستشفى عندما نمرض.
- 3 We learn there at school. - نتعلم في المدرسة.
- 4 We send letters at the post office. - نرسل خطابات في مكتب البريد.
- 5 My mom and dad work in an office. - أبى وأمى يعملان في مكتب البريد.
- 6 We buy clothes and shoes at the shopping mall. - نشترى ملابس وأحذية من مركز التسوق.

1 Read and listen. Answer the questions: اقرأ واستمع. وأجب عن الأسئلة:

My name's Zain. I live in a village **next to** the Nile. I live in a house with my family.

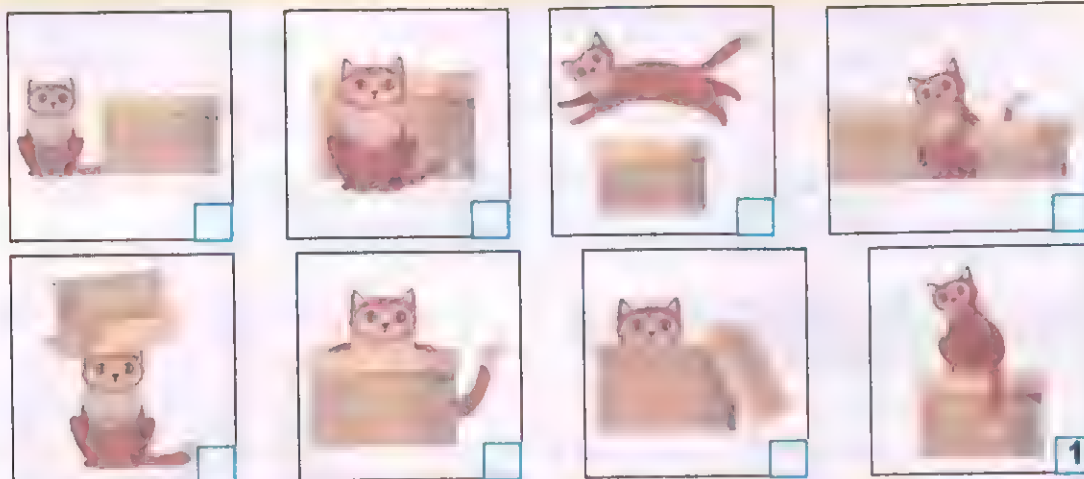
Our house isn't the biggest house in the village. It's **between** a yellow house and a brown house. There are tall trees behind the house.


- Which house does Zain live in?

2 Look, listen, and number:

انظر واستمع ورقم.

1- on 2- in 3- under 4- above 5- next to 6- between 7- behind 8- in front of



3 Look and complete the sentences:

انظر واكمل الجمل.



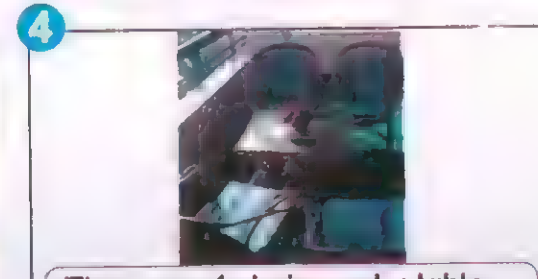
The tent is the car.



There's a plant the couch.



The pink house is the red house and the yellow house.



There are 4 chairs and a table the balcony.



The trees are the apartments.

Help your child look and complete the sentences. ساعد طفلك ينظر ويكمل الجمل.

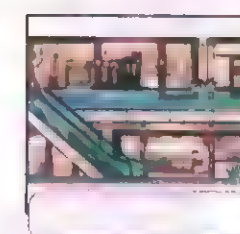
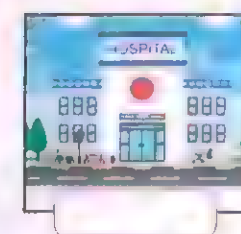
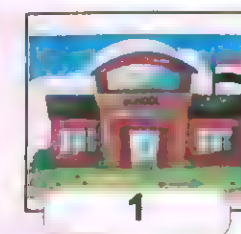
4 Look, listen and number:

انظر واستمع ورقم.

1- school
4- post office

2- supermarket
5- office

3- shopping mall
6- hospital



5 Read and match:

اقرأ وصل.

1 where we buy food

2 where we send letters

3 where I learn

4 where I buy clothes and shoes

5 where my mom and dad work

6 where we go when we are sick

a. office

b. supermarket

c. shopping mall

d. school

e. hospital

f. post office

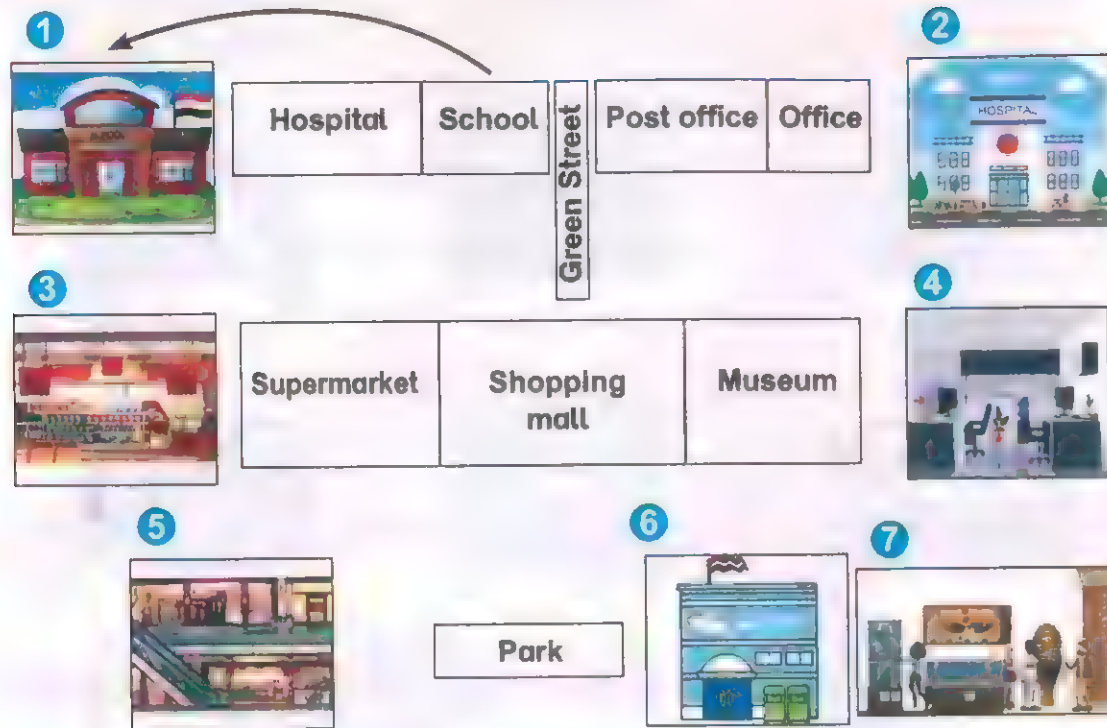
Help your child read and match.

ساعد طفلك يقرأ ويوصل.

Unit 4 Where do you live?

6 Look and connect:

انظر وصل (كما بالمثال) :



7 Where is it? Look at the map and make sentences:

أين هو المكان؟ انظر إلى الخريطة وكون جمل (اختر حرف الجر المناسب لعمل الجمل) :

1- hospital / school

The hospital is next to the school.

2- shopping mall / supermarket / museum

The shopping mall is the supermarket

3- Green Street / school / post office

4- the park / the shopping mall

Help your child make sentences with prepositions.

ساعد طفلك أن يكون جمل باستخدام حروف الجر.

Activities

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. A: is the hospital?

B: It's behind the park.

- a When b Where c Which d Why

2. We send letters at the

- a school b hospital c station d post office

3. I buy clothes and shoes at the

- a office b shopping mall c hospital d school

4. My sister is sick. She's going to

- a hospital b museum c school d shopping mall

5. There's a cat the chair.

- a between b next c on d of

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

In front - between - supermarket - next

My name is Hala. I live in Alexandria. There is a in my street. I buy chips from it. It's the post office and the school. There are trees of it.

3 Read and match (A) with (B):

اقرأ وصل:

1 We buy food

2 The trees are in front

3 The tent is next

4 The shopping mall is

a. between the park and the museum.

b. office.

c. of our house.

d. at the supermarket.

e. to the car.

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

Unit 4 Where do you live?

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

اعد لترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. mall - There's - behind - a shopping - the supermarket.

2. next - school - The hospital - to - is - the.

3. is - the - post - Where - office?

4. a village - live - I - The Nile - in - next to.

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

the park is next to the school

6 Write an email of TWENTY FOUR (24) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب بريد إلكتروني من (٢٤) كلمة عن:

Your house

مجاها عنه اخر الوحدة

rooms - garden

To your friend Marawan. Your email address is adel@yahoo.com. Your friend's email address is marawan@gamil.com.

New Message	
To	_____ Cc Bcc
From	_____
Subject	_____
Dear	_____,

Yours,	_____

Lesson 3

3

Giving directions

Part: 1

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



office مكتب



store محل / متجر



supermarket سوبر ماركت



school مدرسة

My town

مدينتي



bank بنك



hospital مستشفى



shopping mall مركز تسوق

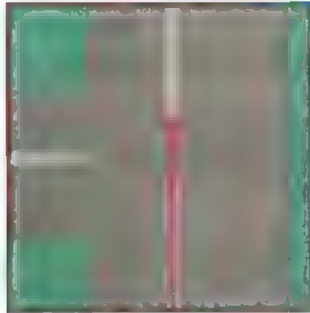


park حديقة عامة

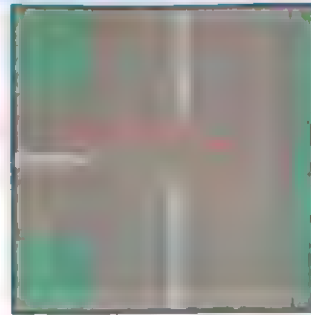


station محطة

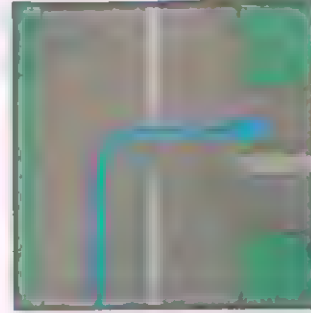
استمع إلى المفردات:



Go straight* ahead
سير بشكل مستقيم



Turn left
استدر يساراً



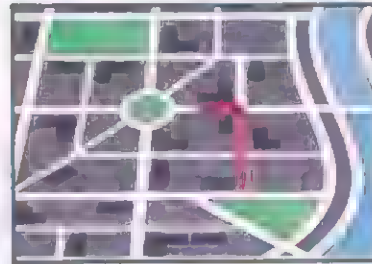
Turn right
استدر يميناً

Giving
Directions

اعطاء
الاتجاهات



Take the second right
خذ ثاني يمين



Take the second left
خذ ثاني يسار



It's on the corner
إنها في ركن / ناصية الشارع

Other words كلمات أخرى

Excuse me.

اعذرنى.

Thank you.

اشكرك.

near

قريب / بالقرب من

on the other side

على الجانب الآخر

by car

بالسيارة

corner

ركن / ناصية

See you soon!

أراك قريباً!

on the right

على اليمين

on the left

على اليسار

Help your child give the directions.

ساعد طفلك ان يعطى الاتجاهات.

Language Functions

وظائف لغوية

Excuse me, where's the + (المكان)?

ولإجابة نستخدم جمل لاعطاء الاتجاهات:

Go straight ahead.	Turn right / left.
Take the second right / left.	It's on the corner.
It's on the right / left.	

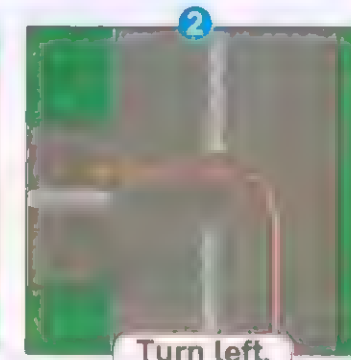
- Excuse me, where's the supermarket?
- Go straight ahead. Turn left. The supermarket is on the right.

1 Read and listen to the directions:

اقرأ واستمع إلى الاتجاهات:



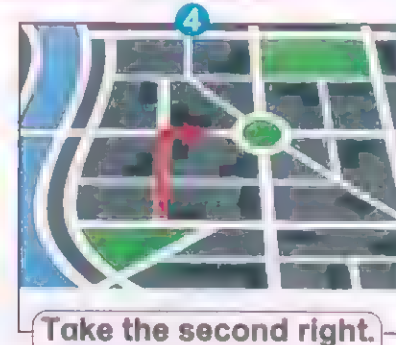
Go straight ahead.



Turn left.



Turn right.



Take the second right.

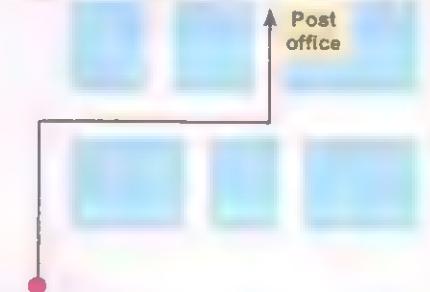


It's on the corner.

2 Read and put the directions in the correct order:

اقرأ وضع الاتجاهات في الترتيب الصحيح:

- ☐ Take the second left.
- ☐ Thank you!
- ☒ 1 Excuse me, where's the post office?
- ☐ Turn right.
- ☐ Go straight ahead.
- ☐ It's on the corner.



Help your child order the directions.

ساعد طفلك في ترتيب الاتجاهات.

Unit 4 Where do you live?

3 Dina is going to visit her friend Fareeda. Read and follow the directions. Does Fareeda live in house A, B or C?

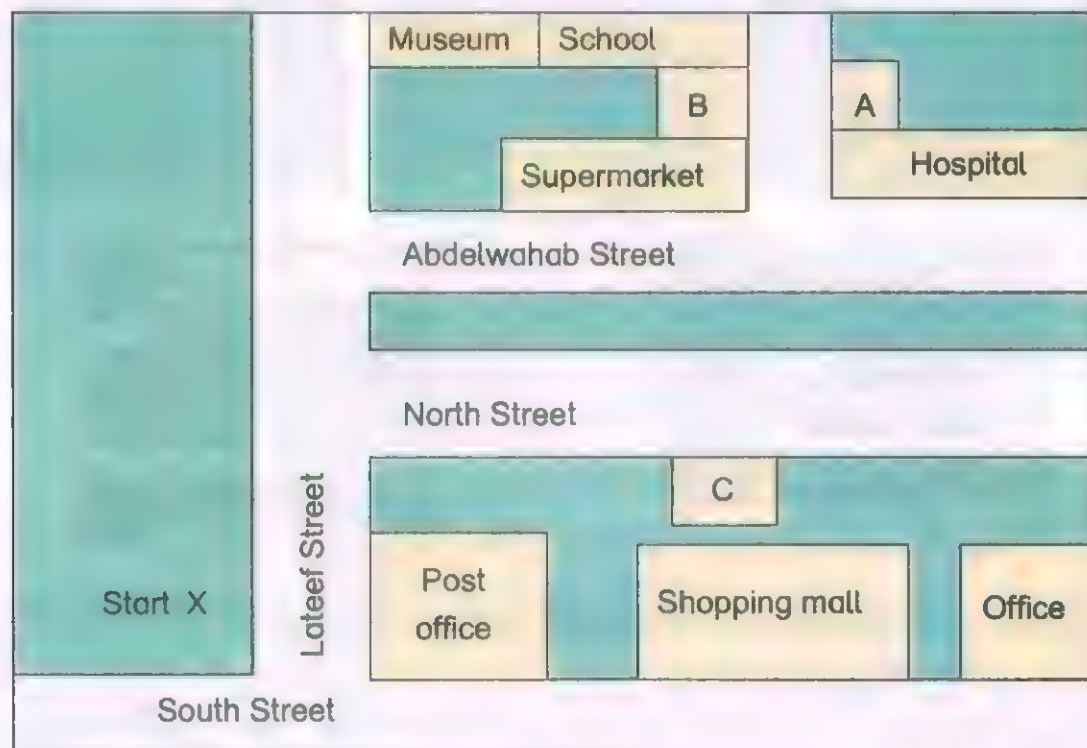
ستزور دينا صديقتها فريدة. اقرأ واتبع الاتجاهات. هل فريدة تعيش في منزل (A, B أو C)؟

Hi Dina!

I'm so happy you are coming to my house today. Here are some directions. From the corner of South Street with Lateef Street, go straight ahead. Take the second right to Abdelwahab Street. Go straight ahead. Turn left at the supermarket. My house is between the supermarket and the school.

See you soon!

Fareeda



- Fareeda lives in house

Help your child read and find Fareeda's house.

ساعد طفلك ان يقرأ ويحدد منزل فريدة.



Activities

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. straight ahead.

- a Going b Go c Goes d Went

2. A: Excuse me, is the supermarket?

B: It's on the left.

- a where b what c how d why

3. The post office is the left.

- a in b of c on d for

4. right. It's next to the bank.

- a Burn b Turn c Help d Take

5. The hospital is the corner.

- a of b on c between d under

2 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصل:

1 My town

2 Where's

3 Our school is

4 I play football

a. museum

b. your village?

c. in the park.

d. has many stores.

e. next to the hospital.

3 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

My name's Dina. I live in a big town. There are many places in my town. My school is near my house. I walk to school every morning. There's a park next to my school. I often play football in the park with my friends. There's a supermarket near my house. I can buy food from it. My dad works in an office. He goes there by car. There's a shopping mall next to the office.

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

Unit 4 Where do you live?

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The passage is mainly about Dina's
☐ a supermarket ☐ b office ☐ c room ☐ d town
- The office is next to the
☐ a park ☐ b hospital ☐ c shopping mall ☐ d post office

B. Answer the following questions:

- How does Dina go to school?

- Where does Dina play football?

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

اعد لترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

- bank - Where - the - is?

- left - it's - Turn right - on - the.

- is - on - The shopping mall - corner - the.

- between - My house - the supermarket - the school - and - is.

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

- where is your school

- fareeda lives in a house

Lesson 3

LIVING ON A BOAT Pronunciation

Part: 2

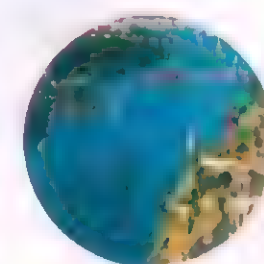
استمع إلى المفردات:



summer
الصيف



tourist boats
قوارب سياحية



the Nile
النيل

Other words كلمات اخرى

English	اللغة الإنجليزية
Chinese	اللغة الصينية
interesting places	اماكن شيقه
suddenly	فجأة

from all over the world	من جميع أنحاء العالم
one day	ذات يوم
on a boat	على قارب

Conjugation of verbs (تصريف الأفعال)

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ		Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ	
save	ينقذ	saved		meet	يقابل	met	
decide	يقرر	decided		swim	يعوم	swam	
smile	يتسم	smiled		fall	يسقط	fell	
shout	يصيح	shouted		know	يعرف	knew	
call	ينادي	called		go	يذهب	went	

Unit 4 Where do you live?

1 Read and listen. How did Sherif's dad help the small child?

اقرأ واستمع. كيف ساعد والد شريف الطفل الصغير؟



My friend Sherif lives on a boat in the summer. His parents work on tourist boats so he goes with them. They travel up and down the Nile.

He likes the summer very much. He sees many interesting places and he meets people from all over the world. He speaks English and Chinese with the tourists. One day, the boat stopped and Sherif saw some children playing. Suddenly a small child fell into the river! The child shouted "Please help me!"

Sherif called his dad. Sherif's dad saw the child and jumped into the river. He swam and saved the child! The child smiled and said. "Thank you so much!"

Sherif was very happy, but he also decided to learn to swim.

2 Read again and write T (True) or F (False): اقرأ مرة أخرى وضع صح أو خطأ:

	True	False
1 Sherif lives in a city in the summer.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
2 Sherif can speak English and Chinese.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
3 The small child fell into the river.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
4 Sherif jumped into the river.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

3 Answer the following questions:

اجب عن الأسئلة التالية:

1- Why is it important to help others?

١- لماذا من المهم أن نساعد الآخرين؟

2- Do you think it's important to know how to swim? Why?

٢- هل تعتقد أنه من المهم أن تكون قادر على السباحة؟ لماذا؟



Pronunciation

لاحظ! المس رقبتك بأصابعك وانطق كلمة (fish) هل تحركت أحبالك الصوتية؟

انطق كلمة (van) بما تشعر؟

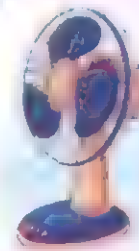
تنقسم الاصوات الساكنة في اللغة الانجليزية الى voiced وهي الاصوات التي تهتز فيها الاحبال

الصوتية عند نطقها مثل، (b/d/g/j/l/m/n/r/v/w/y/z/th: this)

وهناك اصوات voiceless وهي التي لا تهتز الاحبال الصوتية عند نطقها

مثل، (ch/f/k/p/s/sh/t/th: thin)

★ Listen and say: استمع وقل



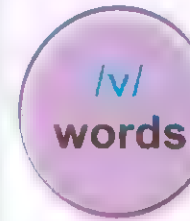
fan مروحة



face وجه

living room
حجرة معيشةfish
سمكة/f/
words

foot قدم

/v/
words

van شاحنة



vegetables خضراوات

Activities



1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

speaks - Chinese - meets - tourists

My friend's father is a teacher. He likes to travel a lot. He travels to China. He can speak He people from all over the world. He meets a lot of and speaks English with them.

2 Read and match (A) with (B):

اقرأ وصل:

A

- 1 I like the
- 2 We saw some
- 3 She works
- 4 He speaks

B

- a. English.
- b. at the supermarket.
- c. summer very much.
- d. children playing.
- e. helps us at the supermarket.

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

اعد لترتيب الكلمات للكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. can - I - English - speak.
2. the - Sherif's - saved - dad - child.
3. work - My - boats - tourist - parents - on.
4. the river - fell - The - child - small - into.

4 Write a paragraph of TWENTY FOUR (24) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٢٤) كلمة عن:

Living on a boat

tourist boat - summer

مجاوب عنه آخر الوحدة

Lessons 4&5

★ Writing Project

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



Hurghada* Beach
شاطئ الغردقة

Hurghada
مدينة الغردقة



bazaar
سوق شرقي (بازار)



Sahl Hasheesh
منطقة سهل حشيش



Sahara Desert
الصحراء الكبرى



The Red Sea
البحر الأحمر

Other words كلمات أخرى

In the east of
interesting
tourist
safaris

في شرق
شيق
سائح
رحلات السفاري

photo
map
diagram

صورة فوتوغرافية
خريطة
رسم بياني

Language Functions

وظائف لغوية

نتعلم في هذا الدرس كيف نكتب عن المكان الذي نعيش فيه.

Hi, I'm (اسم). I live in a city / village called (قريتك / مدينتك). It is in (south / east of) (north / west of) (مكان المدينة).
About (عدد الناس) people live here. There is a (شيء يميز المكان). There are lots of (أشياء تميز المكان). We don't have but we have

Hi, I'm Hamza. I live in a city called Siwa. It is in west of Egypt. About 35 thousand people live here. There are lots of palm trees here. We don't have skyscrapers, but we have nice houses.

Help your child learn about Hurghada.

ساعد طفلك يتعلم عن مدينة «الغردقة».

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

Study the following

- 1 I live in a city called Hurghada. - اعيش في مدينة تسمى الغردقة.
- 2 Hurghada is in the east of Egypt. - تقع الغردقة في شرق مصر.
- 3 It's a big city and about 190,000 people live here. - إنها مدينة كبيرة ويعيش بها حوالي ١٩٠,٠٠٠ شخص.
- 4 There is the Sahara Desert where lots of tourists go on safaris. - يوجد بها الصحراء الكبرى حيث يذهب كثير من السائحين في رحلات السفاري.
- 5 Sahl Hasheesh has beautiful houses and interesting bazaars. - يوجد في سهل حشيش منازل جميلة وبازارات رائعة.

1 Read Mariam's article about Hurghada: اقرأ مقال مريم عن الغردقة.

Hurghada - My town

Hi, I'm Mariam. I live in a city called Hurghada. It's in the east of Egypt on the Red Sea. It's a big city and about 190,000 people live here. In Hurghada, there's a **beach** and there are lots of interesting things to do. There is the **Sahara Desert** where lots of tourists go on safaris. We have **Sahl Hasheesh** in the south of Hurghada. It has some beautiful houses and interesting **bazaars**.



Mariam



Hurghada beach

Sahl Hasheesh, Egypt

Sahara Desert

2 Read again and complete the table: اقرأ مرة أخرى واكمل الجدول.

City	Hurghada
Where is it?	
How many people live there?	
Interesting things in Hurghada	

3 How does Mariam make her text interesting? Check the items she uses

كيف جعلت مريم النص الخاص بها شيقاً؟ احرص ما تم استخدامه.

• a photo of her

☐

• a map

☐

• drawings

☐

• a diagram

☐

• photos

☐

• interesting facts

☐

Unit 4 Where do you live?

- 4 Think about your village or city. Do research and complete the table:

فكر في قريتك أو مدينتك، قم بعمل بحث واكمل الجدول،

City/Village	
Where is it?	
How many people live there?	
Interesting things in my city/village	

- 5 Read and answer:

اقرأ واجب،

The people who help us: the supermarket worker



This is Mona. She works at the **supermarket** near my house. My family and I see her **every week** when we buy food. Mona checks the food is fresh. She **helps** us when we can't find something. She is very **kind** and **happy**.



Activities

- 1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False): استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

نمي الاستماع آخر الكتاب

True False

- 1 Mona works at a supermarket. ☐ True ☐ False
- 2 Mona helps people find something in the supermarket. ☐ True ☐ False
- 3 Mona checks the food is fresh. ☐ True ☐ False
- 4 Mona is an unkind girl. ☐ True ☐ False

- 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. A: lives in Hurghada?

B: My friend Mariam.

- a When b Who c Where d Why

2. I live in a city Hurghada.

- a called b calls c calling d call

3. Tourists can go on in the Sahara Desert.

- a sleeping b safaris c swimming d diving

4. We can buy beautiful things at the

- a bazaars b tourists c photos d gardens

- 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

bazaars - tourists - safaris - interesting

I live in Giza. There are a lot of 1 places you can visit. Many 2 visit the Pyramids and the Sphinx. There are many stores and 3 in Giza.

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Unit 4 Where do you live?

4 Read and match (A) with (B):

اقرأ وصل:

1 I live in a city

2 How many people

3 Hurghada is in the

4 Lots of tourists

a. interesting things.

b. live there?

c. go on safaris.

d. called Hurghada.

e. east of Egypt.

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

اعد ترتيب الكلمات للكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. live - Hurghada - I - called - in - a city.

2. Egypt - of - in - It's - east - the.

3. very - and - is - kind - She - happy.

4. is - fresh - Mona - the food - checks.

6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

hurghada is a big city

7 Write a paragraph of TWENTY FOUR (24) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٢٤) كلمة عن:

Hurghada

east - the Sahara Desert



Review

Inside the house داخل المنزل



room
حجرة



balcony
بلكونة



bedroom
حجرة نوم



living room
حجرة المعيشة



kitchen
مطبخ



bathroom
حمام



dining room
حجرة الطعام

Different houses المنازل المختلفة



house
منزل



apartment
شقة



tent
خيمة



houseboat
قارب للسكن

Public places اماكن عامة



post office مكتب البريد



school مدرسة



office مكتب



supermarket سوبر ماركت

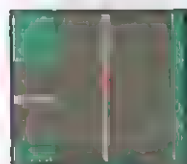


hospital مستشفى

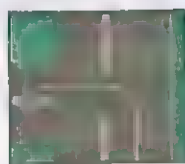


shopping mall مركز للتسوق

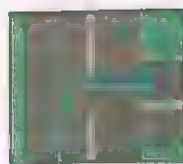
Giving Directions اعطاء الاتجاهات



Go straight ahead
سير بشكل مستقيم



Turn left
استدر يساراً



Turn right
استدر يميناً



Take the second right
خذ ثاني يمين



It's on the corner
إنها في ركن الشارع



Take the second left
خذ ثاني يسار

Language Functions وظائف لغوية

Excuse me, where's the + (المكان)?

ولإجابة نستخدم جمل لاعطاء الاتجاهات:

Go straight ahead.	Turn right / left.
Take the second right / left.	It's on the corner.
It's on the right / left.	

- Excuse me, where's the post office?
- Go straight ahead. Turn right. The post office is on the corner.
- نستخدم حروف الجر الخاصة بالمكان لتحديد مكان شيء ما.
- The kitchen is **next to** the living room.
- The cave is **in** the rock.
- My house is **between** the tall house and the tree.

1

السؤال
عن المكان
لنستخدم

2

Prepositions
of place
حروف الجر الخاصة
بالمكان

ملاحظات على نطق بعض الكلمات



- 1 نطق كلمة (whole) حرف (w) لا يطق أي (silent).
- 2 نطق كلمة (dining) انطق حرف (a) الأول يطق مثل (a) كما في كلمة (kite).
- 3 نطق كلمة (bathroom) حرفي (th) يطقان مثل (th) في اللغة العربية.
- 4 في نطق كلمة (couch) المقطع الصوتي (ou) يطق كما في كلمة (out).
- 5 نطق كلمة (mall) المقطع الصوتي (all) يطق مثل نطق كلمة (fall) حيث حرف (a) يطق مثل حرف (o).
- 6 لا نطق حرفي (gh) في كلمة (straight).
- 7 نطق كلمة (Hurghada) حرفي (gh) يطقان مثل (ج) في اللغة العربية.

Writing Skills

مهارات الكتابة

Write a paragraph / an email of
TWENTY FOUR (24) words.

Answers to Paragraphs/ emails

My bedroom

- 1 My house has a lot of rooms. My favorite room is the bedroom. I sleep in it. I read stories there. I like my house very much.

Lesson 2

My house

2

New Message

To marawan@gmail.com. Cc Bcc

From adel@yahoo.com

Subject My house

Dear Marawan,

How are you? I want to tell you about my house. I live in a big house. It has a lot of rooms. I love it because it's big. I can play outside my house. My house has a beautiful garden. I watch TV in the living room.

Yours,

Adel

Lesson 3

Hurghada

- 3 Hurghada is in the east of Egypt. You can visit the Hurghada beach. About 190,000 people live there. The Sahara Desert there is very interesting. Tourists go on safaris in the Sahara Desert.

Lessons 4&5

Living on a boat

- 4 My dad works on a tourist boat. He travels up and down the Nile. He likes the summer. He sees many interesting places. He speaks English, too.

A- Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

استمع وأختَر:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

1. Ahmed lives in a village. (small - big - fat)
 2. Ahmed's school is next to the (park - farm - hospital)

B- Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialog:

أقرأ وأكمل:

front - house - outside

- A : Where do your grandparents live?
 B : They live in a
 A : Is there a garden in of the house?
 B : Yes, I can play with my brother.

C- Reading Comprehension

3 Read and choose the correct answer:

أقرأ وأختَر:

My name is Hend. I'm in grade four. I live in a big house with my family. We have three bedrooms and two bathrooms. My mum cooks food in the kitchen. I watch TV in the living room. My favorite room is my bedroom. I like to read and do my homework in my bedroom. I like to help my father at the farm. He grows tomatoes and onions for us.

Choose the correct answer:

1. Hend is in grade (five - four - six)
 2. Hend lives in a big (house - apartment - kitchen)
 3. Hend likes to do her homework in the (bathroom - kitchen - bedroom)
 4. Hend's father grows and onions. (mangoes - tomatoes - potatoes)
 5. Hend's house has three (bedrooms - bathrooms - kitchens)

D- Vocabulary and Structures

4 Choose the right answer from a, b, or c: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة

1. Sherif English and Chinese.
 a travels b meets c speaks
 2. The office is in of the school.
 a next b front c above
 3. Take the second
 a right b write c light
 4. It's next the post office.
 a on b to c too
 5. Hurghada is in the of Egypt.
 a left b corner c east

E- Writing

5 Rearrange the words to make correct sentences:

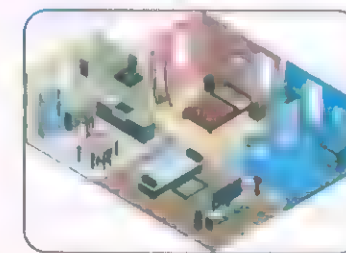
اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

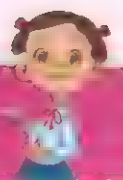
1. The hospital - next to - is - the school.
 2. does - do - What - she?
 3. people - live - How many - there?
 4. works - at - supermarket - She - the.

6 Write a paragraph of Four (4) sentences about:

اكتب فقرة الشائبة من (٤) جمل عن:

Your new apartment





1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False): استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

True False

1 Nada loves her farm.

☐ ☐

2 Nada's town is small.

☐ ☐

3 Nada's town has schools.

☐ ☐

4 Nada's town is a good place to live in.

☐ ☐

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. A: is the bank? B: It's next to the hospital.

a Where b What c When d Why

2. People in the desert live in a

a boat b tent c balcony d ship

3. The hospital is to the post office.

a on b behind c in front d next

4. It a lot of rooms.

a have b has c having d are

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

teacher - next - like - mall

I live in a small town. My school is to a big park. My father is a He is very kind. He teaches English. Students him very much.

4 Read and match (A) with (B):

اقرأ وصل:

A

B

1 There are chairs

a. right.

2 Turn right,

b. it's on the corner.

3 A school is a place

c. where I can learn.

4 Take the second

d. in the balcony.

e. there's a park.

5 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

My friend, Mariam lives in Hurghada. It's a beautiful city in the east of Egypt. In Hurghada there's a beach and there are lots of cool stores and restaurants. There is also the Sahara Desert where lots of tourists go on safaris. Sahl Hasheesh is in the south of Hurghada. It has some beautiful houses and interesting bazaars.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The main idea of the passage is about

a Cairo b Hurghada c Luxor d Alexandria

2. Sahl Hasheesh is in the of Hurghada.

a north b south c east d west

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Where does Mariam live?

4. What does Sahl Hasheesh have?

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. Dad's - room - What - favorite - is?

2. live - grandparents - My - a tent - in.

3. is - the - The couch - in - room - living.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

I can speak english

8 Write a paragraph of TWENTY FOUR (24) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (24) كلمة عن:

Your town

Alexandria - clean



Myself and others

Unit

5

Where do you work?

أين تعمل؟

لنطق
الكلمات الجديدة التي
أعلاها علامة نجمة
أنظر آخر الوحدة

Objectives of the Unit أهداف الوحدة

1. Listen, read, and write about workers in my community.
- يستمع الطالب ويقرأ ويكتب عن العاملين في مجتمعه.
2. Learn about electricity.
- يتعلم الطالب عن الكهرباء.
3. Practice using this, that, these, those.
- يتدرب الطالب على استخدام (هذا / هذه - ذلك / تلك - هؤلاء - أولئك).
4. Practice word stress on two-syllable words.
- يتدرب الطالب على نطق المقاطع المشددة في الكلمات المكونة من مقطعين صوتيين.
5. Think and write about the pros and cons of different jobs.
- يفكر الطالب ويكتب عن مميزات وعيوب الوظائف المختلفة.
6. Make a report about workers in my community.
- يقوم الطالب بعمل تقرير عن العاملين في مجتمعه.

Lesson

1

Listening

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات



electrician*

كهربائي



plumber*

سباك



garbage* collector

عامل نظافة



mail carrier

ساعي بريد



mechanic*

ميكانيكي



bus driver

سائق اتوبيس

Other words كلمات أخرى

safe
pipe
wait
collect

آمن
ماسورة
ينتظر
يجمع

garbage = trash
faucet*
parcel

قمامة
حنفية
طرود ، رزمة

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع

deliver يُوصل
fix يصلح
connect يربط / يُوصل
drip ينقط
wait ينتظر
collect يجمع
hope يأمل

Past ماضٍ

delivered
fixed
connected
dripped
waited
collected
hoped

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع

forget ينسى
take out يُخرج / يُزيل
drive يقود
put out يضع شيء في مكانه

Past ماضٍ

forgot
took out
drove
put out

Study the following

نتعلم في هذا الدرس عن الوظائف المختلفة وما تقدمه كل وظيفة.

الوظيفة Job	الوصف Description
electrician كهربائي	- loves making things work. يحب أن يجعل الأشياء تعمل.
plumber سباك	- connects your home to water. يوصل منزلك بالماء. - fixes pipes and faucets. يصلح المواسير والحنفيات.
garbage collector عامل النظافة	- takes away all the garbage. يأخذ كل القمامة. - works hard to collect the trash. يعمل بجد لجمع القمامة.
mail carrier ساعي البريد	- delivers your letters and parcels. يوصل خطاباتك وطرودك.
mechanic ميكانيكي	- fixes cars or buses. يصلح السيارات أو الاتوبيسات.
bus driver سائق الاتوبيس	- drives you to many different places. يوصلك لأماكن مختلفة. - helps you get to school on time. يساعدك أن تصل إلى المدرسة في الوقت المحدد.

تعلم أيضاً الإجابة عن أسئلة تخص الوظائف.

- Which job is the most interesting? Why?
أي وظيفة هي الأكثر مُتعة؟ لماذا؟
- I think being a bus driver is the most interesting job. You drive to many different places and help lots of people.
- Which job is the most difficult? Why?
أي وظيفة هي الأصعب؟ ولماذا؟
- I think being an electrician is the most difficult. Because you can get an electric shock.

1 Listen and read. What is Dad's job?

استمع واقراء:

Zeinab : Dad, do you like your job?

استمع إلى النص:



Dad : Yes, I love being a plumber. Sometimes it's **wet**⁽¹⁾ and **messy**⁽²⁾ because I have to fix pipes and faucets.

Zeinab : Did you want to do a different job when you were young?

Dad : Yes, I wanted to be a bus driver or a mechanic.

Zeinab : So what happened?

Arabic Meaning:

- ١- رطب - مبلل
- ٢- فوضوي
- ٣- القيادة

Dad : Well, I don't really like **driving**⁽³⁾! I was much better at fixing pipes and faucets than cars!

Zeinab : What about you, Youssef? Do you like being an electrician?

Youssef : Yes, I love making things work!

Dad : Oh look, here's the mail carrier! I hope he has my parcel...

Zeinab : And there's the garbage collector! Oh, I forgot to take out the trash! Wait please ...

2 Read again and complete the sentences with words from Exercise 1:

اقرأ مرة أخرى وأكمل الجمل بالكلمات من التمرين رقم (١).

- When he was young, Dad wanted to be a _____ or a _____.
- Youssef is an _____.
- The _____ arrives as they are talking.
- Zeinab forgot to put the trash out for the _____.
- If you have a problem with pipes or faucets in your house, you need a _____.

Help your child listen and answer the questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويجيب عن الأسئلة.

3 Listen and say. Then write:

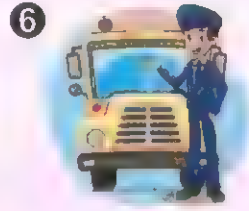
استمع وقل ثم اكتب:

bus driver - electrician - garbage collector

mail carrier - mechanic - plumber



electrician



4 What do you think?

ماذا تعتقد؟

1. Which job is the most interesting? Why?

أى عمل هو الأكثر إثارة؟ لماذا؟

2. Which job is the most difficult? Why?

أى وظيفة هي الأصعب؟ لماذا؟



I think being a bus driver is the most interesting job. You drive to many different places and help lots of people.

Did you know?

هل تعلم؟

Cairo produces around 20,000,000 tons of garbage every year. Garbage collectors work hard to collect it all.

هل تعلم أن القاهرة تنتج ٢٠,٠٠٠,٠٠٠ طن من القمامة سنوياً. يعمل عمال النظافة بجد لجمع هذه القمامة.

Activities

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False):

استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

(الشرقية - فاقوس ٢٠٢٣)

True False

1 A mechanic fixes buses and cars.

2 An electrician doesn't love making things work.

3 A garbage collector collects the trash.

4 A mail carrier delivers your letters and parcels.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. A / an drives the bus.

a electrician

b farmer

c plumber

d bus driver

2. We need a mechanic to our car.

a deliver

b help

c fix

d play

3. A mail carrier delivers your

a parcels

b faucets

c electricity

d water

4. A garbage collector the trash.

a makes

b builds

c draws

d collects

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

loves - pipes - useful - delivers

(المنوفية - تلا ٢٠٢٣)

There are many different jobs in our country. These jobs are very Many people help us in our homes. For example, an electrician making things work. A plumber fixes the A garbage collector collects the trash.

4 Read and match (A) with (B):

اقرأ وصل:

1 An electrician loves

2 A plumber fixes

3 A bus driver

4 A mechanic

a. letters and parcels.

b. fixes your car.

c. drives the bus.

d. the pipes and faucets.

e. making things work.

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Unit 5 Where do you work?

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. collects - A garbage - trash - collector - the.

2. A bus - drives - driver - bus - the.

3. fixes - faucets - A plumber - and - the pipes.

4. carrier - delivers - A mail - parcels.

6 Write an email of TWENTY-FOUR (24) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب إيميل من (٢٤) كلمة عن:

The plumber

مجاوب عنه آخر الوحدة

pipes - connects

To your friend Ayman. Your email address is osama@gmail.com. Your friend's email address is ayman@gmail.com

New Message	
To	Cc Bcc
From	
Subject	
Dear	
<p>Yours,</p>	

Lesson

2

IS IT NEAR OR FAR? Electricity

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



socket مقبس (بريزة)



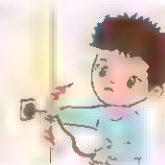
electricity كهرباء



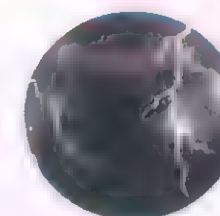
electrician كهربائي



plug فيشة



electric shock
صدمة كهربائية



lightning برق



storm عاصفة



light ضوء



parcel طرد



tools أدوات



trash قمامة

Other words كلمات أخرى

safely	بأمان
flash	وميض
never	أبداً
repair shop	ورشة إصلاح
How fast...?	كم سرعة...؟
speed	سرعة
wet hands	أيدي مبللة

dry	جاف
save electricity	يوفر الكهرباء
interviewer	محاوّر
near	قريب
far	بعيد
close to	قريب من

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع

study يدرس - يتدرب
practice يتدرب / يمارس
control يتحكم
touch يلمس

Past ماضٍ

studied
practiced
controlled
touched

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع

become يصبح
burn يحرق / يحترق
put يضع
get يحصل على

Past ماضٍ

became
burnt
put
got

Grammar

قواعد لغوية

Inf / Always + inf.

- Wash your hand. / Always wash your hands.

Don't + inf / Never + inf.

- Don't make noise. / Never make noise.

للاشارة إلى شيء مفرد قريب (يعد أو لا يعد) نستخدم (this) بمعنى (هذا / هذه).

- This is the socket the electrician is fixing.

للاشارة إلى شيء مفرد بعيد (يعد أو لا يعد) نستخدم (that) بمعنى (ذلك / تلك).

- That's the water dripping from the faucet.

للاشارة إلى أشياء (جمع) قريبة نستخدم (These) بمعنى (هؤلاء).

- These are the plumber's tools.

للاشارة إلى أشياء (جمع) بعيدة نستخدم (Those) بمعنى (أولئك).

- Those are the mail carrier's parcels.

لاحظ

عند اختيار This / That / These / Those نحدد هل الشيء مفرد أو جمع إذا كان مفرد نختار إما (This أو That) وإذا كان جمع نختار (These أو Those).

- ثانياً: نحدد إذا كان قريب أو بعيد. إذا كان قريب (near) نختار (This / These) والبعيد (far) نختار (That / Those).

Study the following

- Never touch anything electrical with wet hands. لا تلمس أي شيء كهربائي ويديك مبللة.
- Never put anything into a socket. لا تضع أي شيء في البريزة.
- Only use plugs. استخدم الفيشة فقط.
- Always make sure your hands are dry before you touch anything electrical. تأكد دائماً أن يديك جافة قبل أن تلمس شيء كهربائي.
- Electricity travels very fast. الكهرباء تنقل بسرعة شديدة.
- Electricity is very dangerous. الكهرباء خطيرة جداً.
- Electricity can burn us. الكهرباء يمكن أن تحرقنا.
- If we get an electric shock. We can't control our bodies. إذا تعرضنا لصدمة كهربائية لا يمكننا التحكم في أجسادنا.

1 Look, read, and match the sentences to the pictures:

انظر واقرأ وصل الجمل بالصورة

- That mail carrier is delivering letters.



- These mechanics work in the repair shop.



- This bus is taking me to school.



- Those drivers are driving the new buses.



Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع

study يدرس - يتدرب
practice يتدرب / يمارس
control يتحكم
touch يلمس

Past ماضٍ

studied
practiced
controlled
touched

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع

become يصبح
burn يحرق / يهترق
put يضع
get يحصل على

Past ماضٍ

became
burnt
put
got

Grammar

قواعد لغوية

Inf / Always + inf.

- Wash your hand. / Always wash your hands.

Don't + Inf / Never + inf.

- Don't make noise. / Never make noise.

للاشارة إلى شيء مفرد قريب (يعد أو لا يعد) نستخدم (this) بمعنى (هذا / هذه).

- This is the socket the electrician is fixing.

للاشارة إلى شيء مفرد بعيد (يعد أو لا يعد) نستخدم (that) بمعنى (ذلك / تلك).

- That's the water dripping from the faucet.

للاشارة إلى أشياء (جمع) قريبة نستخدم (These) بمعنى (هؤلاء).

- These are the plumber's tools.

للاشارة إلى أشياء (جمع) بعيدة نستخدم (Those) بمعنى (أولئك).

- Those are the mail carrier's parcels.

لاحظ

عند اختيار This / That / These / Those نحدد هل الشيء مفرد أو جمع إذا كان مفرد نختار إما (This أو That) وإذا كان جمع نختار (These أو Those).
- ثانياً: نحدد إذا كان قريب أو بعيد. إذا كان قريب (near) نختار (This / These) والبعيد (far) نختار (That / Those).

Study the following

- Never touch anything electrical with wet hands. لا تلمس أي شيء كهربى وبديك مبللة.
- Never put anything into a socket. لا تضع أي شيء في البريزة.
- Only use plugs. استخدم الفيشة فقط.
- Always make sure your hands are dry before you touch anything electrical. تأكد دائماً أن يديك جافة قبل أن تلمس شيء كهربى.
- Electricity travels very fast. الكهرباء تنقل بسرعة شديدة.
- Electricity is very dangerous. الكهرباء خطيرة جداً.
- Electricity can burn us. الكهرباء يمكن أن تحرقنا.
- If we get an electric shock. We can't control our bodies. إذا تعرضنا لصدمة كهربية لا يمكننا التحكم في أجسادنا.

1 Look, read, and match the sentences to the pictures:

انظر واقرأ وصل الجمل بالصورة

- That mail carrier is delivering letters.



- These mechanics work in the repair shop.

a

- This bus is taking me to school.



c

- Those drivers are driving the new buses.



d



b

2 Complete the sentences:

أكمل الجمل:

That - These - This - Those

1. Can you see? 's the mail carrier. (far)



2. is my aunt. Her name is Amira. She's a teacher. (near)



3. children are going to school. (near)



4. children are watching TV. (far)



3 Change the sentences into plural:

حول الجمل إلى صيغة الجمع:

1. This is the faucet in my bathroom.

These are the faucets in our bathrooms.

2. That is the mechanic who fixed my car.

3. This is the garbage collector who collects our trash.

4. That is the plumber who came to our house.

4 Read the interview quickly. Then answer the questions:

اقرأ المقابلة سريعاً ثم اجب عن الاسئلة:

• Answer the questions:

1. Why is electricity dangerous?

2. Is it easy to become an electrician?

Help your child learn about workers in his community.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم عن العاملين في مجتمعه.

استمع إلى النص:



Amira the electrician

This is Amira, she's an electrician. She studied and practiced for three years before she became an electrician.

She knows how to work safely with electricity.

Interviewer : Tell us something interesting about electricity.

Amira : Did you know, electricity travels very fast, close to the speed of light! In a storm we sometimes see a flash of lightning. That flash has enough electricity for 1,000 families for a year!

Interviewer : Is electricity dangerous?

Amira : Yes, very dangerous. If we get an electric shock, we can't control our bodies. It can also burn us.

Interviewer : How can we use electricity safely?

Amira : Never touch anything electrical with wet hands. Never put anything into a socket, only use plugs.



5 Read the interview again. Answer the questions:

اقرأ وأكمل الجمل:

1. How fast can electricity travel?

2. How can you use electricity safely at your home?

6 Read and complete the sentences:

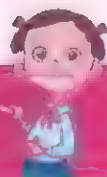
اقرأ وأكمل الجمل:

- Never touch anything electrical with hands.

- Always make sure your hands are before you touch anything electrical.



Activities



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- children are watching TV.
 a That b This c Those d Then
- Look, bird is flying.
 a these b that c those d they
- Those are working in the repair shop.
 a mechanics b builders c mail carriers d teachers
- is the garbage collector who collects our trash.
 a These b Those c That d Than
- Don't touch anything electrical with hands.
 a wet b dry c dirty d clean
- Use only into a socket.
 a lights b bodies c plugs d computers

2 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصل:

- | | |
|---|--|
| A
1 Why is
2 Electricity travels
3 Never put anything
4 Those children | B
a. your hands.
b. into a socket.
c. are watching TV.
d. very fast.
e. electricity dangerous? |
|---|--|

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

My brother Ziad wants to be an electrician. Electricity is very dangerous, so he will study and practice it for years. He always buys books about electricity. He learns a lot of information about electricity. He learns that electricity travels very fast, close to the speed of light. In a storm we sometimes see a flash of lightning. That flash has enough electricity for 1,000 families for a year.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Ziad wants to be a/an
 a plumber b electrician c farmer d mail carrier
- We see a flash of lightning in a
 a storm b trash c parcel d socket

B. Answer the following questions:

- What does Ziad buy?

- How fast can electricity travel?

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملًا صحيحة:

- are - tools - These - plumber's - the.

- mail - That - is - carrier - parcels - delivering.

- is - She - electrician - an.

- with - touch - Never - wet hands - anything - electrical.

- electricity - Why - dangerous - is?

- make - Always - sure - are - hands - your - dry.

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

is electricity dangerous

Activities



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- children are watching TV.
a That b This c Those d Then
- Look, bird is flying.
a these b that c those d they
- Those are working in the repair shop.
a mechanics b builders c mail carriers d teachers
- is the garbage collector who collects our trash.
a These b Those c That d Than
- Don't touch anything electrical with hands.
a wet b dry c dirty d clean
- Use only into a socket.
a lights b bodies c plugs d computers

2 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصل:

- | | |
|--|---|
| <p>1 Why is</p> <p>2 Electricity travels</p> <p>3 Never put anything</p> <p>4 Those children</p> | <p>a. your hands.</p> <p>b. into a socket.</p> <p>c. are watching TV.</p> <p>d. very fast.</p> <p>e. electricity dangerous?</p> |
|--|---|

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

My brother Ziad wants to be an electrician. Electricity is very dangerous, so he will study and practice it for years. He always buys books about electricity. He learns a lot of information about electricity. He learns that electricity travels very fast, close to the speed of light. In a storm we sometimes see a flash of lightning. That flash has enough electricity for 1,000 families for a year.

ساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة. Help your child deal with such questions.

Lesson 2

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Ziad wants to be a/an
a plumber b electrician c farmer d mail carrier
- We see a flash of lightning in a
a storm b trash c parcel d socket

B. Answer the following questions:

- What does Ziad buy?
.....
- How fast can electricity travel?
.....

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

- are - tools - These - plumber's - the.
.....
- mail - That - is - carrier - parcels - delivering.
.....
- is - She - electrician - an.
.....
- with - touch - Never - wet hands - anything - electrical.
.....
- electricity - Why - dangerous - is?
.....
- make - Always - sure - are - hands - your - dry.
.....

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

is electricity dangerous
.....

Three cousins

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



architect*
مهندس معماري



cell phone
تليفون محمول



experiment
يجرب / يختبر



tape measure
شريط قياس



fan
مروحة



screwdriver*
مفك



radio
راديو



teacher
مدرس



blocks
لعبة المكعبات



electrician
كهربائي

Conjugation of verbs

نصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present

مضارع

open يفتح
explain يشرح / يفسر
call يتصل

Past

ماضي

opened
explained
called

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present

مضارع

get angry يغضب
put يضع
learn يتعلم

Past

ماضي

got angry
put
learned/ learnt

Other words

different مختلف
curious فضولي
on top of another فوق الآخر
still مازال

learn about يتعلم عن
sometimes أحياناً
patient* صبور
adult شخص راشد (بالغ)

1 Look, listen, and say:

انظر واستمع وقل:



screwdriver



tape measure



blocks

2 Read and listen. Do you know anyone like Lara, Talia, or Amir?

اقرأ واستمع هل تعرف أشخاص مثل لارا وتاليا وأمير؟

Lara, Talia, and Amir are cousins, but they are all very different.

When Lara was a child, she loved to experiment. She was very **curious**. She always carried a **screwdriver** and she opened old radios, cell phones, and anything that had electricity. Her favorite question was: How does it work? She learned about safety with electricity.



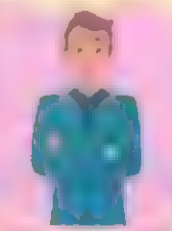
Lara

When Talia was a baby, she played with **blocks**. She put one block on top of another. When she was older, she started making things. She made a little house for her dog and a bed for her sister's doll. She always carried a **tape measure** and a pencil.



Talia

Amir was always very patient and he liked helping people. Sometimes, big brothers can get angry at their little brothers, but Amir was never angry. He played, he helped, and he explained things all the time.



Amir

Today, Lara, Talia, and Amir are all adults, but they still call each other when they need some help.

3 Think, choose, and write. What do you think Lara, Talia, and Amir do today?:

فكر واختر واكتب ماذا تعتقد أن لارا وتاليا وأمير يعملون اليوم؟

an architect - an electrician - a teacher

1. Lara is _____
2. Talia is _____
3. Amir is _____

1 Read again and answer the questions:

- Who does Amir call when the fan doesn't work?
- Who does Lara call when she wants to change something in her house?
- Who does Talia call when she doesn't understand something in her English class?



Pronunciation & Math

Syllables

المقاطع الصوتية

تتكون الكلمات في اللغة الانجليزية من مقاطع صوتية وكل مقطع صوتي يحتوى على صوت متحرك كما يلي:

Count the syllables.



1. كلمة **bin** : تحتوى على مقطع صوتي واحد حيث بها صوت **short**.

2. كلمة **dentist** : تحتوى على مقطعين صوتيين حيث بها صوتين متحركين **[e / i]**.

لاحظ!

- في اغلب الكلمات إذا جاءت الحروف المتحركة معا دون فاصل فهي بذلك تعد مقطع صوتي واحد. فمثلا كلمة **builder** بها حرفين متحركين متتاليين **(u / i)** لكنهما لا يوجد بينهما فاصل إذا هما مقطع واحد.
- في كلمة **make** تنتهي الكلمة بحرف **e** لكنه هنا لا يعتبر صوت متحرك لأنه غير منطوق أصلاً.
- إذا جاءت **(e)** آخر الكلمة وكان قبلها حرف **(l)** فهنا تعد كمقطع صوتي كما في كلمة **apple**.
- لاحظ صوت حرف **(y)** بعد مقطع من المقاطع الصوتية فمثلاً كلمة **city** تحتوى على مقطعين صوتيين.

1 Look and say. How many syllables are in each word?:

أنظر وقل كم عدد المقاطع الصوتية في كل كلمة مما يلي:

electrician	4	e-lec-tri-cian	plumber	
teacher	2	teach-er	mechanic	
collector			dentist	
architect			doctor	

Help your child learn how to count the syllables.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم كيف يعد المقاطع الصوتية.

- بعد ان تعلمنا أن الكلمات الانجليزية تُقسم إلى مقاطع صوتية نتعلم أن هناك مقطع يكون مشدد في الكلمة (أي أن صوت هذا المقطع يكون أكثر صوت بارز في الكلمة).

وتختلف الشدة (s) في اللغة العربية حيث تكون على حرف في الكلمة أما في اللغة الانجليزية تكون على مقطع من المقاطع ويجب معرفة المقطع المشدد في اللغة الانجليزية لأن ذلك ممكن يغير المعنى فمثلاً كلمة (pres-ent) تعني هدية وذلك إذا كان التشديد على المقطع الأول. أما إذا كان التشديد على المقطع الثاني pres-ent يكون معناها يُقدم.

- ولعرفة المقطع المشدد في اللغة الانجليزية نقسم الكلمة إلى مقاطع صوتية ثم نسمع الكلمة ونحدد المقطع أو نبحت عن الكلمة في قاموس وسنرى علامة (*) فوق المقطع المشدد فمثلاً في كلمة (dentist) تقسم إلى (den-tist) نلاحظ أن التشديد على المقطع الأول.

dentist

- لاحظ الكلمات الآتية التشديد على المقطع الأول.

plumber / teacher / builder / driver / doctor / architect

- الكلمة الآتية التشديد على المقطع الثاني.

mechanic

- الكلمة الآتية التشديد على المقطع الثالث.

electrician

2 Which one is correct? Listen and choose:

أي مقطع مشدد؟ استمع واختر:



dentist or dentist

3 Underline the stressed syllable in the words:

ضع خط تحت المقطع المشدد في الكلمات:

plumber teacher collector dentist driver doctor

4 Listen and circle the words which have the correct stress:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الكلمة التي بها التشديد الصحيح:

- | | | | |
|--------------|-----------|-------------|----------|
| 1. plumber | plumber | 4. mechanic | mechanic |
| 2. teacher | teacher | 5. driver | driver |
| 3. collector | collector | 6. doctor | doctor |



CLIL: MATH

Math: Division

عملية القسمة هي تقسيم مجموعة أشياء إلى أجزاء متساوية.

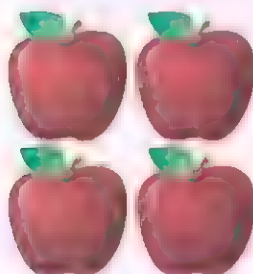
Tip!

Division is separating into different groups.

$15 \div 3 = 5$ Fifteen divided by three equals five.



عملية القسمة هي تقسيم العدد إلى مجموعات متساوية.



لدينا هنا 4 تفاحات وولدين والمطلوب تقسيم التفاح على الولدين بالتساوي.



$$9 \div 3 = 3$$

في هذا المثال لدينا 9 جزرات وثلاث بنات ولعرفة كم جزرة لكل فتاة نقسم العدد الكبير (الجزر) على العدد الصغير (البنات).

1 Look and think. Write the missing numbers:

انظر وفكر. أكتب الأرقام الناقصة.

$$1 \text{ a } 100 \div \dots = 2$$

$$1 \text{ b } 100 \div 2 = \dots$$

$$2 \text{ a } 100 \div 25 = \dots$$

$$2 \text{ b } 100 \div \dots = 25$$

$$3 \text{ a } 100 \div \dots = 5$$

$$3 \text{ b } 100 \div 5 = \dots$$

2 Listen and check:

استمع وتأكد.

استمع للنص وتأكد من إجابتك في التمرين السابق.

Tapescript

نص الاستماع

- 1 a one hundred divided by fifty equals two.
- 1 b one hundred divided by two equals fifty.
- 2 a one hundred divided by twenty-five equals four.
- 2 b one hundred divided by four equals twenty-five.
- 3 a one hundred divided by twenty equals five.
- 3 b one hundred divided by five equals twenty.

3 Read and solve the problem:

اقرأ وحل المسألة.

There are two hundred children in Grade 4. Today they are going on a school trip. Each school bus carries 50 children. How many buses do they need?



Find out



What is this symbol \div called? A Swiss mathematician* called Johann Rahn used it first in 1659.

ماذا يسمى الرمز \div ? استخدمه عالم رياضيات سويسري يدعى يوهان ران لأول مرة عام ١٦٥٩.

A mathematician* works with numbers and math problems. يعمل عالم الرياضيات مع الأرقام والمسائل الحسابية.

Activities



1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False): استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

True False

1 Fatma wanted to be an architect.

☐ ☐

2 Farid wanted to be a mechanic.

☐ ☐

3 Amr, Fatma and Farid are friends.

☐ ☐

4 Amr wanted to be an electrician.

☐ ☐

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. The electrician uses to open old radios.

a blocks b tape measures c screwdrivers d pens

2. The always carries a tape measure and a pencil.

a teacher b architect c farmer d electrician

3. Division is separating into different

a colors b groups c shapes d times

4. Marawan is always He is never angry.

a sad b bad c ugly d patient

3 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصل:

A

1 What job

2 Amir was always

3 Lara is an electrician.

4 Talia played

B

a. She fixes pipes.

b. She carries a screwdriver.

c. with blocks.

d. very patient.

e. do you want to do?

Lesson 3

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجيب عن الأسئلة:

My sister Nada is in Grade Four. She wants to be an architect. When Nada was three, she played with blocks. When she was older, she started making things. She made a house for her cat. She always carried a tape measure and a pencil. My father and mother always help her.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Nada is in Grade

a 4 b 5 c 6 d 3

2. Nada's always help her.

a cousins b sisters c parents d grandparents

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What did Nada make for her cat?

4. When did Nada play with blocks?

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. curious - Lara - very - was.

2. does - How - work - it?

3. likes - people - Amir - helping.

4. She - experiment - to - loved.

6 Write a paragraph of TWENTY FOUR (24) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (24) كلمة عن:

An electrician

مجاب عنه آخر الوحدة

electrician - fixes

Writing Project

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



good
جيد



bad
لئيم



cleaner
عامل نظافة



aunt
عمة / خالة



mail carrier
ساعي بريد

Important words كلمات هامة

class	حصة / درس	pros (good things)	مميزات
on the one hand	من جهة	cons (bad things)	عيوب
on the other hand	من الجهة الأخرى	America	أمريكا
point	نقطة	easy	سهل
fun	متعة	heavy	ثقيل
everyone	كل أحد	weather	طقس
great	رائع	everybody	كل شخص
exercise	تدريب / تمرين	wake up	يستيقظ

Language Functions

وظائف لغوية

تدرس في هذا الدرس مميزات (pros) وعيوب (cons) وظيفة ساعي البريد:

Pros مميزات	Cons عيوب
- Mail carriers get a lot of exercise. - يحصل ساعي البريد على الكثير من التدريب.	- The mail bag is very heavy. - حقيبة ساعي البريد ثقيلة جدًا.
- They speak to a lot of people. - يتحدثون إلى الكثير من الناس.	- Mail carriers wake up very early. - يستيقظ ساعي البريد مبكرًا جدًا.

- 1 Think about a mail carrier's job. What are the good and bad things about the job?: فكر في وظيفة ساعي البريد ما مميزات وعيوب هذه الوظيفة؟
- 2 Read and complete the table: اقرأ وأكمل الجدول:

My name is Sherifa. In class this week, we're talking about the good and bad things about different jobs. My aunt is a mail carrier in America. I talked to her about her job and she told me some of the pros and cons.



Pros and cons of being a mail carrier.

What's it like to be a mail carrier?

There are some good and bad points about the job.

On one hand, mail carriers are outside all day. This is great when the weather is good, but it's not fun when the weather is very hot or cold. Mail carriers walk all day and get a lot of exercise.

Everybody likes getting mail, so everyone likes meeting the mail carrier.

On the other hand there are also some bad things to think about. Being a mail carrier is not an easy job. The mail bag is very heavy.

Another bad thing is that they wake up very early. My aunt starts work at 6 o'clock in the morning.



Pros (Good thing)	Cons (Bad things)
- Mail carriers get a lot of exercise.	It's not easy.

- 3 Read again and answer the questions:

1. What is the paragraph about? عن ماذا تدور الفقرة السابقة؟
2. How does Sherifa start her paragraph? كيف بدأت شريفة الفقرة الانشائية؟
3. How does this help the reader? كيف ساعد ذلك القارئ؟

ساعد طفلك ان يعرف مميزات وعيوب ان يكون ساعي بريد. Help your child know the pros and cons of being a mail carrier.

Unit 5 Where do you work?

4 Choose a job. Write some pros and cons:

اختر وظيفة واكتب بعض المميزات والعيوب:

The job I chose is

Pros	Cons

A report about people who help us

تقرير عن ناس تساعدنا

5 Read the report:

اقرأ التقرير:



Workers who made
our school



The plumbers connect the pipes so that we have water. The electricians connect electricity so that we can use lights.

The cleaners keep the school clean. The bus drivers bring the children to school. The garbage collectors take away our garbage.

The mechanics fix the cars and buses that bring the children to school.



Activities

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. The connects pipes.

- a cleaner b mechanic c plumber d builder

2. The bus driver children to school.

- a draws b fixes c uses d brings

3. The cleaners keep the school

- a dirty b clean c bad d ugly

4. Can you write about the pros and of being a mail carrier?

- a cans b coats c coins d cons

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

drivers - away - connect - deliver

There are a lot of workers who work in our school. The plumbers the pipes at school so that we have water. The bus bring children to school. The garbage collectors take the garbage to keep the school clean.

3 Read and match (A) with (B):

اقرأ وصل:

1 Everybody likes

2 There are good and bad

3 My father starts work

4 Being a mail carrier

a. points of each job.

b. meeting the mail carrier.

c. fixes the bus.

d. isn't an easy job.

e. at eight o'clock in the morning.

Unit 5 Where do you work?

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. are - Mail - all - outside - carriers - day.

2. school - Who - clean - keeps - the?

3. heavy - very - The mail - is - bag.

4. get - exercise - Mail - a lot of - carriers.

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

the mechanic fixes cars and buses

6 Write a paragraph of TWENTY FOUR (24) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٢٤) كلمة عن

مجاب عنه آخر الوحدة

A mail carrier

walks - healthy



Review

Jobs الوظائف



electrician
كهربائي



plumber
سباك



garbage collector
عامل نظافة



mail carrier
ساعي بريد



mechanic
ميكانيكي



bus driver
سائق اتوبيس

Electricity الكهرباء



electric shock
صدمة كهربائية



socket
مقبس (بريزة)



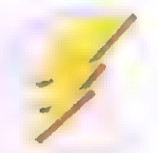
plug
فيشة



tools
ادوات



lightning
برق



electricity
كهرباء

Three cousins اولاد العم الثلاثة



experiment
يجرب / يختبر



screwdriver
مفك



architect
مهندس معماري



tape measure
شريط قياس



blocks
لعبة المكعبات



cell phone
تليفون محمول

Unit 5 Where do you work?

on the one hand	من جهة	pros	مميزات
on the other hand	من الجهة الأخرى	cons	عيوب

Grammar

قواعد لغوية

● للإشارة إلى شيء مفرد قريب نستخدم (this) بمعنى هذا / هذه.

- This is the screwdriver.

● للإشارة إلى شيء مفرد بعيد نستخدم (that) بمعنى (ذلك / تلك).

- That's the faucet.

● للإشارة إلى أشياء (جمع) قريبة نستخدم (These) بمعنى (هؤلاء).

- These are the plumber's tools.

● للإشارة إلى أشياء (جمع) بعيدة نستخدم (Those) بمعنى (اولئك).

- Those are the mail carrier's parcels.

This, That,
These,
Those

ملامح صوتية على نطاق بعض المفردات

١ نطق كلمة (electrician) انطق الحروف (cian) مثل نطق شن في اللغة العربية.

٢ نطق كلمة (garbage) انطق حرف (g) الأول كما ينطق في كلمة (goat) وحرف (g) الثاني ينطق مثل (j) في كلمة (jam).

٣ نطق كلمة (mechanic) انطق حرفي (ch) مثل (k).

٤ في كلمة (plumber) حرف (b) صامت لا ينطق.

٥ انطق كلمة (faucet) انطق حرفي (au) مثل نطق حرف (o) في كلمة (north) وانطق (cet) مثل (sit).

٦ نطق كلمة (screwdriver) انطق الحروف (rew) مثل حرفي (ue) في كلمة (blue).

٧ كلمة (patient) المقطع الصوتي (tien) ينطق مثل كلمة (شن).

٨ كلمة (architect) الحرفين (ch) ينطقا مثل (k).

٩ كلمة (mathematician) المقطع الصوتي (cian) ينطق مثل (شن).



Writing Skills

مهارات الكتابة

Write a paragraph / an email of
TWENTY FOUR (24) words.

Answers to Paragraphs / emails

1

New Message

To ayman@gmail.com Cc Bcc

From osama@gmail.com

Subject The plumber

Dear Ayman,

How are you? I want to tell you about an interesting job. My uncle is a plumber. He works all day. He fixes pipes and faucets. He is healthy. His job is very hard. His job is very important.

Yours,
Osama

Lesson 3

An electrician

2 My father is an electrician. He studied and practiced electricity. He connects your home to electricity. He fixes sockets. It's an interesting job.

Lessons 4.5

A mail carrier

3 Amr is a mail carrier. He walks all day and gets a lot of exercise. He is healthy. He speaks to a lot of people. Everyone likes to meet him.

Unit 5 Activity

A garbage collector

4 A garbage collector's job is very important. A garbage collector works hard to collect the trash. He keeps the streets clean. We all respect him.

A- Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

استمع وأختَر:



- Ihab is years old. (50 - 40 - 30)
- Ihab goes out on his boat and catches (pens - fish - tools)

B- Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialog:

أقرأ وأكمل:

Why - teacher - job

- Gamal : Which is the most interesting?
 Emad : I think being a
 Gamal : do you like this job?
 Emad : Because teachers help and teach children.

C- Reading Comprehension

3 Read and choose the correct answer:

أقرأ وأختَر:

I'm Ali. I love my father. My father's name is Ahmed. He is fifty years old. He is a plumber. He fixes pipes and faucets. He works all the day. My father is very helpful.

Choose the correct answer:

- Ali's father is years old. (40 - 50 - 60)
- Ali's father is a (plumber - teacher - doctor)
- Ali's father is (bad - not good - helpful)
- He fixes (boots - pipes - pens)
- Ali's father works all the (hour - minute - day)

D- Vocabulary and Structures

4 Choose the right answer from a, b, or c: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة

- plumbers fix faucets.
 a This b That c These
- The teacher should be all the time.
 a angry b patient c dangerous
- She loved to experiment. She was very
 a angry b lazy c curious
- Look, bird is flying.
 a these b that c those
- We love our teacher because he is always
 a angry b sad c patient

E- Writing

5 Rearrange the words to make correct sentences:

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

- The bus driver - the children - brings - school - to.
- gets - A mail - very - carrier - up - early.
- can - fast - travel - How - electricity?
- are - day - all - outside - Mail carriers .

6 Write a paragraph of Four (4) sentences about:

اكتب فقرة انشائية من (٤) جمل:

Different jobs





1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False): استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):



	True	False
1 Mahmoud is a teacher.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
2 Mahmoud is a bad electrician.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
3 Mahmoud practiced electricity for four years.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
4 Mahmoud knows how to work safely with electricity.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- Mechanics our cars.
a play b eat c fix d build
- A delivers your parcels.
a teacher b mechanic c mail carrier d plumber
- touch anything electrical with wet hands.
a Always b Never c Isn't d Didn't
- children are so clever.
a That b This c These d Then

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

driver - drives - fix - connects

My father's friend is a bus driver. He ① buses. He brings the children to school. All the children like him. A bus ② drives to many different places. He needs the mechanic to ③ the bus.

4 Read and match:

اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 Electricity	a. delivers letters.
2 A mail carrier	b. electrical with wet hands.
3 This mechanic is	c. working in the repair shop.
4 Never touch anything	d. can burn us.
	e. only use plugs.

5 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Mr Magdy is a teacher. He's a maths teacher. He is very patient. He likes helping people. He never gets angry. He likes his job. He helps his students. He explains the lessons to them. His students like him. I want to be a teacher, too.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Mr Magdy doesn't get
a angry b well c patient d happy
- Mr Magdy is my brother's a / an
a plumber b teacher c electrician d mechanic

B. Answer the following questions:

- What does Mr Magdy teach?
- Who likes Mr Magdy?

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

- touch - Never - electrical - anything - wet - hands - with.

- it - Is - to easy - become - an electrician?

- can - electricity - How - safely - use - we?

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

i want to be a teacher

8 Write a paragraph of TWENTY FOUR (24) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (24) كلمة عن:

مجاوب عنه آخر الوحدة

A garbage collector

collects - trash

Myself and others

What do you do?

ماذا تعمل؟

لنطق
الكلمات الجديدة التي
أعلاها علامة نجمة*
أنظر آخر الوحدة

Objectives of the Unit أهداف الوحدة

1. Read and learn about more jobs.
- يتعلم الطالب ويقرأ عن المزيد من الوظائف.
2. Explore what an industry is and the names of some common industries.
- يستكشف الطالب عن الصناعة وأسماء بعض الصناعات الشائعة.
3. Know about prime numbers.
- يعرف الطالب عن الأعداد الأولية.
4. Distinguish and pronounce short vowel sounds.
- يفرق الطالب بين الأصوات المتحركة القصيرة وينطقها.
5. Learn about words with the prefix dis-.
- يتعلم الطالب عن كلمات تبدأ بالبادئة (dis-).
6. Write about a job you want to do.
- يقرأ الطالب عن وظيفة يريد توليها.

What do you do?



Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



boat

قارب



catch fish

يصاد سمك

Fishing

صيد السمك



fisherman

صياد سمك



net

شبكة



tourism

سياحة

Tourism industry

صناعة السياحة



guide*

مرشد سياحي



hotel

فندق



transportation

المواصلات



farmer

فلاح

Farming

الزراعة



pick

يقطف



school

مدرسة

Education*

التعليم



librarian

أمينة مكتبة



teacher

مدرسة

Other Words

early

مبكراً

library

مكتبة

factory

مصنع

history

تاريخ

information

معلومات

Conjugation of verbs

لتصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع

look after يعتنى بـ

explain. يشرح / يفسر

turn يدور / يلف

Past ماضٍ

looked after

explained

turned

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع

catch يصطاد

wake up يستيقظ

sell يبيع

Past ماضٍ

caught

woke up

sold

Language Functions

وظائف لغوية

ندرس في هذا الدرس مجموعة من الصناعات والأمور المرتبطة بكل صناعة كالعاملين بها وأماكن عملهم وطبيعة عملهم كالآتي:

Industry الصناعة	Who? من؟	Where? أين؟	What? ماذا؟
Fishing	fisherman	on the sea	catches fish / sells fish
Tourism	guide	hotels / outside	explains the history / tells tourists interesting stories
Farming	farmer	farm	grows / looks after vegetables and fruit
Education	teachers librarians	school	teaches children. looks after books. helps children find information.

Study the following

- A fisherman goes out on his boat and catches fish.
- يخرج الصياد في قاربه ويصطاد سمك.
- A fisherman sells fish in the market.
- يبيع الصياد السمك في السوق.
- A farmer grows oranges and looks after the trees.
- يزرع الفلاح برتقال ويعتنى بالأشجار.
- A farmer sends a lot of fruit to the factory to make orange juice.
- يرسل الفلاح الكثير من الفاكهة إلى المصنع لعمل عصير برتقال.
- A guide works in the tourism industry.
- يعمل المرشد السياحي في صناعة السياحة.
- A guide explains the history and tells the tourists lots of interesting information about the places they visit.
- يشرح المرشد السياحي التاريخ ويخبر السائحين بكثير من المعلومات الشيقة عن الأماكن التي يزورها.
- A librarian works in a school library.
- يعمل أمين المكتبة في مكتبة المدرسة.
- A librarian looks after the books.
- يعتنى أمين المكتبة بالكتب.
- A librarian helps children find the information they need.
- يساعد أمين المكتبة الأطفال أن يجدوا المعلومات التي يحتاجونها.

Unit 6 What do you do?

1 Listen and read. What jobs do these people do?

استمع واقرأ. ما الوظائف التي يقوم بها هؤلاء الأشخاص؟

استمع إلى المفردات.

1- I'm a **fisherman**. I wake up very early every day, I go out on my boat and **catch fish**. Then in the afternoon, I come back and sell my fish in the market. My fish go to restaurants and homes all over the world.

2- I'm a **farmer**. I grow oranges. All year, I look after the trees and I give them water and nutrients. Then, I **pick** the fruit. I send a lot of the fruit to the factory to make orange juice. I also sell some of my oranges to the supermarket.



3- I'm a **guide**. I work in the **tourism industry**. People come to my country and it's my job to explain the history and tell the tourists lots of interesting information about the places they visit.

4- I'm a **librarian**. I work in a school library. It's my job to look after all the books. I buy lots of new books and I help children find the information they need.

2 Listen again and answer:

استمع مرة أخرى واجب.

1- Who works in a school?

A librarian.

2- Who works outside?

3- Who works on the sea?

4- Who grows food?

Help your child read and answer the questions.

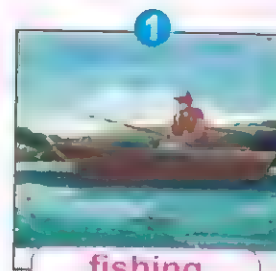
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويجيب عن الأسئلة.

Lesson 1

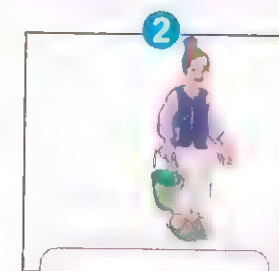
3 Write the words under the pictures:

اكتب الكلمات تحت الصور.

education - farming - fishing - tourism



fishing



4 Look and write. Which industry are the words connected to? Can you add more words to the table?

انظر واكتب أي من الكلمات ترتبط بالصناعة. هل يمكنك إضافة كلمات أخرى بالجدول؟

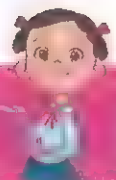
animals - teachers - hotels - nets - transportation library - trees- boats

farming	
fishing	
tourism	
education	

Help your child sort the words.

ساعد طفلك في تصنيف الكلمات.

Activities



1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False): استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

True False

- 1 Hassan is a farmer.
- 2 Hassan grows apples.
- 3 Hassan keeps animals.
- 4 Hassan waters the trees.

<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. A catches fish.

- a guide b fisherman c farmer d librarian

2. The guide works in the industry.

- a education b electricity c tourism d energy

3. My father grows vegetables and fruits on his farm. He is a / an

- a farmer b engineer c guide d librarian

4. A helps children find the information they need in the library.

- a farmer b fisherman c librarian d guide

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

sells - homes - catches - farmer

My uncle is a fisherman. He wakes up very early every day. He goes out on his boat and 1 fish. In the afternoon, he comes back and 2 fish in the market. His fish go to the restaurants and 3 all over the world.

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

Lesson 1

اقرأ وصل:

4 Read and match (A) with (B):

1 Farmers pick

2 The fisherman sells his

3 I go on a boat

4 I tell the tourists

a. lots of interesting information.

b. and catch fish.

c. all the books.

d. fish in the market.

e. the fruit.

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. works - on - Who - the - sea?

2. in - industry - I - tourism - work - the.

3. looks - The - farmer - after - trees - the.

4. in - The - the school - works - librarian - library.

6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

a guide explains the history

7 Write a paragraph of TWENTY FOUR (24) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٢٤) كلمة عن:

The farmer

pick - grow trees

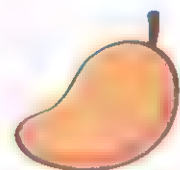
مجاوب عنه في آخر الوحدة

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات.



cut down يقطع



mango مانجو



money نقود

Non-renewable

غير متجدد



gas غاز



oil بترول



coal فحم

Renewable

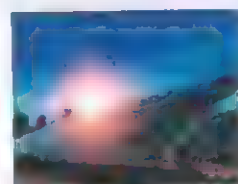
متجدد



wave energy طاقة الأمواج



wind energy طاقة الرياح



solar energy طاقة شمسية

Energy Resources
مصادر الطاقة

Other words

wood خشب
pros مميزات
cons عيوب
sources / resources مصادر

cause pollution تسبب تلوث
right صح
wrong خطأ
run out ينفذ

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع

have / has يملك
grow ينمو
burn يحرق / يهترق

Past ماضٍ

had
grew
burnt

Present مضارع

eat يأكل
sell يبيع
give يعطي
cut down يُزيل / يقطع

Past ماضٍ

ate
sold
gave
cut down

Definition

تعريف

Renewable

It can grow again or never run out.

متجدد

يمكن أن تنمو مرة أخرى أولاً تنفذ أبداً.

Non-renewable

It can run out or never grow again.

غير متجدد

يمكن أن تنفذ أولاً تنمو مجدداً.

Study the following

ندرس في هذا الدرس المصادر المتجددة وغير المتجددة للطاقة:

- المصادر المتجددة (Renewable resources) هي المصادر التي لا تنتهي والموجودة دائماً.
- المصادر غير المتجددة (Non-renewable resources) هي المصادر التي ستنتهي بالتأكيد لأننا نستخدمها وسوف تنفذ:

Renewable متجددة	Non-renewable غير متجددة
wind energy طاقة الرياح	oil بترول
wave energy طاقة الأمواج	coal فحم
solar energy الطاقة الشمسية	gas غاز

1 Read. Is a mango tree renewable or non-renewable?

اقرأ. هل شجرة المانجو مصدر متجدد أو غير متجدد؟

Two mango trees

Sara and Malak are sisters. Each sister had a beautiful mango tree next to her house. Every year, the sisters ate beautiful mangoes. Their children played under the trees.

One day, Malak said, "I don't need mangoes. I need money. Let's cut down my tree. I can sell the wood."

She cut the tree and she sold the wood. Malak was happy.

Next year, Sara's mango tree grew bigger and bigger. It gave Sara more mangoes.

Malak looked out of the window. There was no mango tree. She had no mangoes and no more wood.

"Don't worry," said Sara. "Plant this mango seed, and it will grow into a big tree."



1 Read again and answer the questions: اقرأ مرة أخرى وأجب على الأسئلة.

- Why does Malak cut down the mango tree?
- What are the cons of cutting down the mango tree?
- What do you think of what Malak did? Was she right or wrong?
- Would you cut the mango tree?

2 We make electricity from energy sources. Match the energy sources to the pictures: نولد الكهرباء من مصادر الطاقة. صل مصادر الطاقة بالصورة.

1 oil

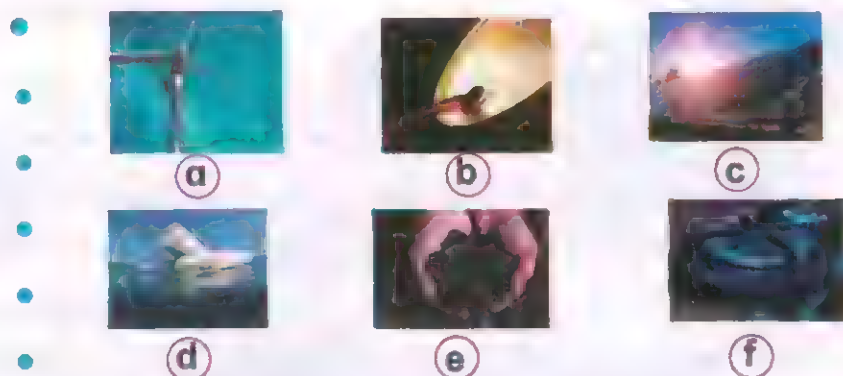
2 wave energy

3 coal

4 solar energy

5 wind energy

6 gas



3 Write each energy source in the table:

اكتب كل مصدر للطاقة وصنفه في الجدول الآتي:

Renewable متجدد	Non-renewable غير متجدد

Activities

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- Coal, oil and gas are energy resources.
a renewable b funny c lazy d non-renewable
- People cut down the trees to the wood.
a buy b grow c sell d draw
- The energy is a renewable energy.
a wood b gas c coal d solar
- Plant this seed. It will grow into a
a table b bed c tree d chair

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

down - trees - sold - happy

My friend Amr needed money to buy things. He had a lot of in the garden. He cut a lot of trees. He them. He was very sad because there were no trees in the garden.

3 Read and match (A) with (B):

اقرأ وصل:

- | | |
|---|--|
| <p>A</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Renewable energy Sara's mango tree Malak cut down Plant this | <p>B</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> was happy. can grow again or never run out. mango seed. gave her more mangoes. the tree to get wood. |
|---|--|

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. Malak - and - sisters - are - Sara .

2. will - grow - The seed - into - tree - a big.

3. does - Why - Malak - down - cut - tree - the mango?

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

Would you cut the mango tree

6 Write a paragraph of TWENTY FOUR (24) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إرشائية من (٢٤) كلمة عن:

Wind energy

مجاب آخر الوحدة

resources - renewable

Fresh Fish Van
Pronunciation & Math


Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:


fresh fish van
شاحنة سمك طازج

fisherman
صياد

grandpa
جد

village
قرية

A short story

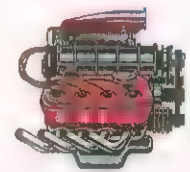
قصة
قصيرة

sad
حزين

disappointed
مُحبط

10

عشرة 10


engine*
محرك

van
شاحنة

fish
سمكة

the sun
الشمس

Other words كلمات أخرى

in front of
opinionأمام
رأي

problem

مشكلة

Conjugation of verbs تصريفات الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع

shout يصيح
skim يقرأ سريعاً (يتصفح)

Past ماضٍ

shouted
skimmed

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع

get يحصل على
hear يسمع
have fun يستمتع بوقته

Past ماضٍ

got
heard
had fun

1 Skim the story quickly. Who are the main characters?

تصفح القصة سريعاً من هم الشخصيات الرئيسية؟

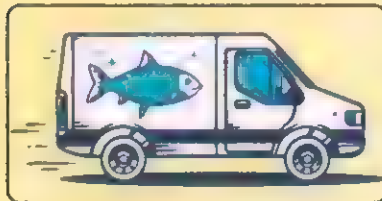
Fresh fish van

استمع إلى النص

There's an old fisherman in my village. He drives around the village in an old van. He likes his job. He has fun. He shouts, "Fish! Fresh fish! Come and get your lovely fresh fish".

One day, he was in front of my house. He couldn't start his van. He was sad and **disappointed**.

My mom saw the man. It was hot in the sun. She wanted to help.



Mom's dad (my grandpa) was a mechanic. He taught her all about cars. She looked at the old van's **engine**.

"It is a very simple problem. I can fix it," said Mom.

The old fisherman was surprised.

Then, we heard the sound of the engine. His van was fixed!

"Thank you," the fisherman said. He gave Mom ten fresh fish.



2 How much do you remember? Answer. Then read and check

كم مقدار ما تتذكره؟ أجب. ثم اقرأ وتأكد.

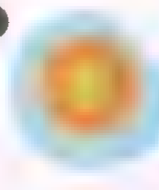
1. What does the old man sell? He sells
2. Why was the old man sad and disappointed?
Because he couldn't
3. Why do you think the old man was surprised? Because

3 Match and write:

صل واكتب:

fish - sun - ten - van

1



2



3



4



4 Read the story again and answer. Use the words in Exercise 3:

اقرأ القصة مرة أخرى واجب. استخدم الكلمات من تمرين 3:

1. What is hot?
The sun.
2. What does the old man drive?
- ماذا يقود الرجل المسن؟
3. What does the old man sell?
- ماذا يبيع الرجل المسن؟
4. How many fish does the old man give Mom?
- كم سمكة أعطى الرجل المسن لأم؟

5 Read and say. Close your book. Can you remember the sentences?

اقرأ وقل. اغلق كتابك. هل تستطيع تذكر هذه الجمل؟

1. You can have fun in the sun.
2. There's a man in a van.
3. He sells fresh fish from the river.
4. There are ten men standing on one leg.



Pronunciation

★ Listen and say: استمع وقل

استمع إلى المفردات.



/i/		/e/	10	/æ/		/ʌ/	
fish	سمكة	ten	عشرة	van	شاحنة	sun	الشمس

١ - ندرس في هذا الدرس الصوت (/i/) و (/e/) ونلاحظ الفرق بينهما كما في كلمتي ten و fish وكلمتي ten / tin حيث نلاحظ في نطق (tin) أن (in) تنطق مثل كلمة (in) بمعنى في لكن (en) تنطق مثل (en) في (pen).

٢ - ندرس أيضا الصوت /æ/ و /ʌ/ والفرق بينهما كما في الكلمتين van و sun حيث تشبه كلمة van نطق كلمة man وكلمة sun تشبه نطق كلمة bus.

٣ - وندرس أيضا بادئة الكلمات (dis) والتي تعطي معنى النفي.

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع

Past ماضٍ

disagree لا يوافق
disappear يختفي
disappoint يُحبط

disagreed
disappeared
disappointed

Present مضارع

Past ماضٍ

dislike لا يحب
disobey لا يطيع

disliked
disobeyed

1 Find more words in the text with the same sound:

اوجد كلمات أخرى في النص بنفس الصوت.

sun	van	fish	ten
bus	man	fin	pen
.....
.....

Help your child learn about short vowels.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم عن الأصوات المتحركة القصيرة.

2 Look and write. Complete the sentences:

انظر واكتب - أكمل الجمل.

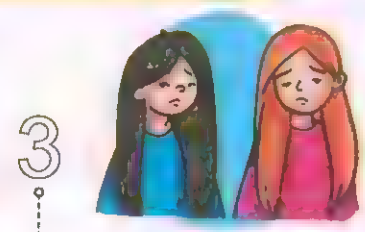
disagree - disappeared - disappointed - dislikes - disobeyed



The boy is
He didn't pass the test.



She
ice cream.



These friends



I'm sorry because
I my mom.



The rabbit from
the hat.



MATH

Prime numbers الأعداد الأولية

- A prime number is a number you can divide only by itself and 1, e.g. 2, 3, 5, etc.
ندرس في هذا الدرس العدد الأولي وهو العدد الذي يقبل القسمة على نفسه وعلى الواحد مثل:

2, 3, 5, 7, 11

لاحظ!

- العدد 4 ليس عدد أولي لأنه يقبل القسمة على نفسه وعلى الواحد وعلى رقم ٢.

- العدد 9 غير أولي لأنه يقبل القسمة على نفسه وعلى الواحد وعلى ٣

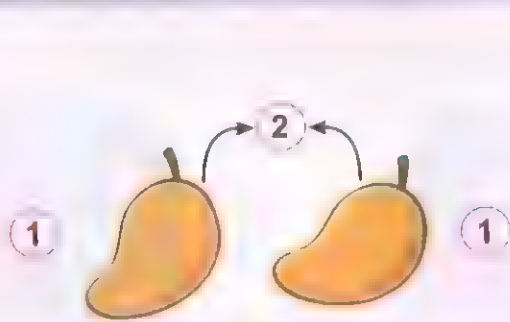
- لاحظ الأعداد الأولية من 1 - 100

(2, 3, 5, 7, 11, 13, 17, 19, 23, 29, 31, 37, 41, 43, 47, 53, 59, 61, 67, 71, 73, 79, 83, 89, 97)

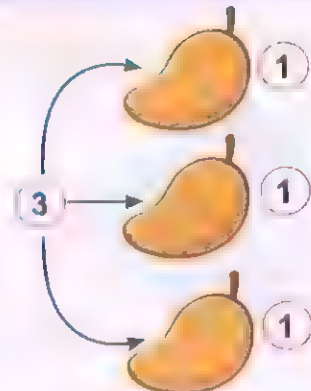
Unit 6 What do you do?

1 Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:



$$1 \times 2 = 2$$



$$1 \times 3 = 3$$

2 Circle the prime numbers:

ضع دائرة حول الرقم الأولي:

10

12

3

20

43

5

14

37

25

13

3 Add these numbers. If the answer is a prime number write it in red:

اجمع الأتي وإذا كان الناتج عدد أولي اكتبه بالأحمر:

1 $6 + 7 =$

2 $37 + 20 =$

3 $70 + 9 =$

4 $40 + 4 =$

Find out



Circle the smallest prime numbers:

2, 3, 5, 7, 9, 11, 13, 15, 17, 19, 23 and 29.

Is number 1 a prime number or not?

- هل رقم 1 عدد أولي أم لا؟

Activities

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. The mom could the old van's engine.

- a fix b shout c teach d play

2. The boy is He didn't pass the test.

- a disappeared b disappointed c disobeyed d disliked

3. We the sound of the engine.

- a drove b gave c heard d burnt

4. He is a bad boy. He his mom.

- a disappeared b loved c paid d disobeyed

2 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 The fisherman sells	a. old man drive?
2 The rabbit	b. disappeared from the hat.
3 The fisherman gave	c. ice cream.
4 She dislikes	d. fish around the village.
	e. mom ten fresh fish.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

There's an old fisherman in my village. He drives around the village in an old van. The fisherman sells fresh fish every day. One day, he was in front of an old woman's house. The van's engine stopped working, so the man couldn't start his van. He was sad and disappointed. The woman wanted to help. She could fix the engine because her father was a mechanic and taught her all about cars. The man was surprised. He thanked the woman and gave her ten fresh fish.

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Unit 6 What do you do?

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The main idea of the passage is about a
 a teacher b farmer c fisherman d guide
- The woman could fix the van's
 a wheel b engine c seat d light

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Why was the man disappointed?

4. What did the man give the woman?

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. is - The - disappointed - boy.

2. didn't - He - the - test - pass.

3. gave - He - mom - fresh - ten - fish.

4. old - The - fisherman - surprised - was.

5 Add and circle the prime numbers:

اجمع وضع دائرة حول العدد اذا كان اولي:

1 $6 + 7 =$ (13)

2 $37 + 20 =$

3 $70 + 9 =$

4 $40 + 4 =$

5 $10 + 7 =$

6 $23 + 20 =$

7 $32 + 28 =$

8 $29 + 50 =$

Lessons

4&5

Writing Project



Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



quick	بسرعة / سريع	world	العالم
patient	صبور	different	مختلف
ready	جاهز	hard work	عمل شاق
student	طالب	life	حياة
polite	مهابذ	show respect	يظهر الاحترام
hair	شعر	favorite	مفضل
advice	نصيحة	shelf	رف
teacher	مدرسة / مدرس	surprising questions	أسئلة مفاجئة

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع

change	يغير
encourage	يشجع
respect	يحترم
ask	يسأل
answer	يجيب

Past ماضٍ

changed
encouraged
respected
asked
answered

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع

think	يفكر
teach	يعلم
get off	ينزل من

Past ماضٍ

thought
taught
got off

Study the following

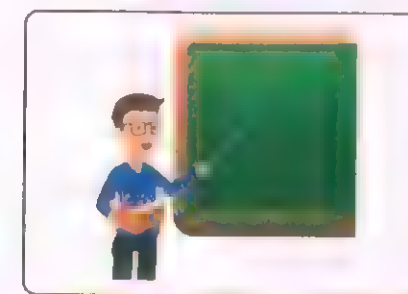
- I want to be a teacher. - أريد أن أصبح مدرس.
- Students always ask surprising questions. - دائماً ما يسأل الطلاب أسئلة مفاجئة.
- Teachers need to think quickly. - يحتاج المدرسون أن يفكروا بسرعة.
- They need to encourage their students. - يحتاجوا أن يشجعوا طلابهم.

2 Read the poster. Do you agree or disagree?

اقرأ البوستر، هل تتفق أم تختلف؟



I respect the cleaner.
I don't throw litter.

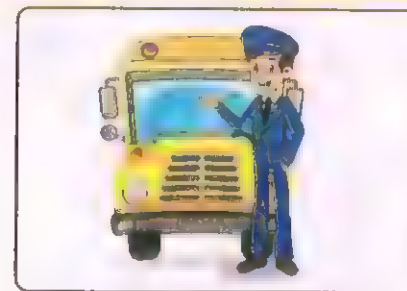


I respect the teacher.
I listen to him carefully.

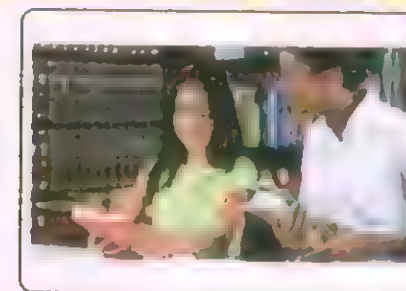
How to show respect

كيف اظهر الاحترام

I respect the bus driver. I say
thank you when I get off the bus.



I respect the librarian. I put my
books back on the shelf.



- 5 They need to be very patient. - يحتاجون أن يتحلوا بالصبر.
- 6 A teacher can change their students' lives. - يستطيع المدرس أن يغير حياة طلابه.
- 7 A good teacher is always ready to learn. - المدرس الجيد يكون جاهز دائماً للتعلم.
- 8 Everyone in the class knows different things. - يعرف كل شخص في الفصل أشياء مختلفة.
- 9 I respect the librarian. I put my books back on the shelf. - احترم أمين المكتبة. أعيد كتبتي على الرف.
- 10 I respect the cleaner. I don't throw trash. - احترم عامل النظافة. لا ألقى القمامة (على الأرض).

1 Think and answer:

فكر واجب:

1. What are the good and bad things about being a teacher?

- ما هي الأشياء الجيدة والسيئة في وظيفة المدرس؟

استمع إلى المفردات:

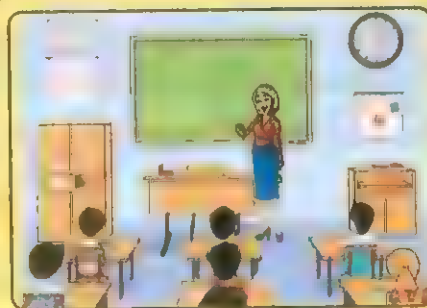


When people ask me, "What do you want to do?" I answer: "I want to be a teacher. For me, it's the best job in the world."

For a teacher, every day is different.

Students always ask surprising questions. A teacher can change their students' lives so teachers need to be very patient. They work for many hours every day. It's hard work, but it's exciting. Teachers need to think quickly. They need to encourage their students. A good teacher is always ready to learn. Teachers teach their students, but students also teach their teachers.

Everyone in the class knows different things.



Activities

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- A teacher can change students'
☐ a hair ☐ b things ☐ c teeth ☐ d lives
- We respect to the people around us.
☐ a disagree ☐ b show ☐ c talk ☐ d work
- A good teacher is always ready to
☐ a sleep ☐ b play ☐ c learn ☐ d drive
- I don't throw litter because I respect the
☐ a cleaner ☐ b guide ☐ c electrician ☐ d dentist

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

ready - patient - encourage - parents

Teaching is one of the best jobs in the world. The teachers need to their students. The teachers need to be A good teacher is always to learn.

3 Read and match: اقرأ وصل:

- | | |
|---|---|
| <p>A</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Teachers need Teachers encourage I put books Teachers need to be | <p>B</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> It's hard work. their students. on the shelf. very patient. to think quickly. |
|---|---|

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. people - show - We - to - older - respect.

2. throw - don't - I - litter.

3. to do - What - you - want - do?

4. questions - surprising - Students - ask - always.

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

do you want to be a teacher

6 Write an email of TWENTY FOUR (24) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب إيميل من (٢٤) كلمة عن:

The teacher's job

مجاوب عنه آخر الوحدة

hard - change

To your friend Adel. Your email address is medhat@gmail.com. Your friend's email address is adel@gmail.com

New Message	
To Cc Bcc
From
Subject
Dear	
.....	
.....	
.....	
Yours,	
.....	

Review



Fishing صيد السمك



catch fish يصطاد سمك net شبكة fisherman صياد سمك boat قارب

Tourism industry صناعة السياحة



tourism سياحة guide مرشد سياحي hotel فندق transportation المواصلات

Farming الزراعة



farmer فلاح pick يقطف

Education التعليم



school مدرسة teacher مدرسة librarian أمينة مكتبة

Review Unit 6

Energy Resources مصادر الطاقة

Renewable متجدد



wave energy
طاقة الأمواج

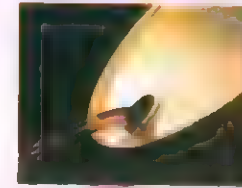


solar energy
طاقة شمسية



wind energy
طاقة الرياح

Non-renewable غير متجدد



oil بترول

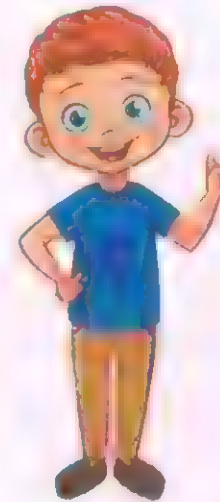


coal فحم



gas غاز

ملاحظات على نظام الصوت



١ انطق كلمة (guide) مثل كلمة (ride) مع اختلاف أول صوت.

٢ في كلمة (education) تنطق الحروف (tion) مثل (شن) في اللغة العربية.

٣ لنطق كلمة (engine) ينطق حرف (أ) مثل حرف (أ) في كلمة (bin)

وحرف (e) الأخير لا ينطق.

Write a paragraph / an email of
TWENTY FOUR (24) words.

Answers to Paragraphs / Emails

Lesson 1

The farmer

- 1 I'm a farmer. I wake up early every day. I pick fruit. I grow trees. I keep a lot of animals. I look after animals.

Lesson 2

Wind energy

- 2 Wind energy is important for us. It's a renewable resource. The wind energy produces electricity. It can grow again or never run out. We don't need to burn this resource.

Lesson 3

the teacher's job

- 3
- | | | |
|--|-------------------|--------|
| New Message | | |
| To | adel@gmail.com | Cc Bcc |
| From | medhat@gmail.com | |
| Subject | The teacher's job | |
| Dear Adel, | | |
| I want to be a teacher. The teacher works at school. The teacher works for many hours. It's hard work. The teacher can change their student's lives. | | |
| Yours, | | |
| Medhat | | |

Activity Unit 6

The librarian

- 4 My sister is a librarian. She works in a school. She looks after all the books. Students like her very much. They respect her. They put their books back on the shelf.

Al-Azhar Exercises

الأسئلة الخاصة بالأزهر الشريف

A- Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

استمع وأختَر:

1. A good teacher is always ready to (sell - drive - learn)
2. Everyone in the knows different things. (park - class - shop)

B- Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialog:

أقرأ وأكمل:

parents - polite - respect

- Ahmed : Do you people around you?
Youssef : Yes, I should be
Ahmed : Who teaches you to respect people?
Youssef : My teach me.

C- Reading Comprehension

3 Read and choose the correct answer:

أقرأ واختر:

Fishing is my favorite hobby. I often go fishing without catching anything, but I'm not sad. I get up in the morning and walk to the river. I catch fish. Then, I go back home. I give the fish to my mother. She is happy and cooks delicious fish for us.

Choose the correct answer:

1. Fishing is my favorite (subject - hobby - job)
2. I give the fish to my (mother - brother - father)
3. I often go without catching anything. (swimming - playing - fishing)
4. I get up in the morning and walk to the (lake - sea - river)
5. My mother is happy and cooks delicious for us. (meat - fish - rice)

D- Vocabulary and Structures

4 Choose the right answer from a, b, or c: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة

- Gas is a energy.
a solar b renewable c non-renewable
- Teachers need to be
a lazy b bad c patient
- The guide works in the industry.
a farming b energy c tourism
- We the sound of the engine.
a drove b gave c heard
- A looks after all books.
a farmer b librarian c guide

E- Writing

5 Rearrange the words to make correct sentences:

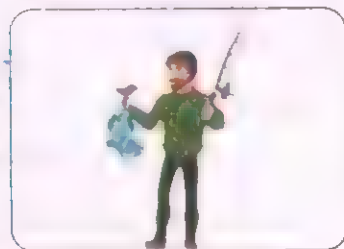
اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. works - a school - Who - in?2. grow - food - Farmers - the.3. respect - I - bus - the - driver.4. sells - fish - A fisherman - the market - in

6 Write a paragraph of Four (4) sentences about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (4) أربع جمل عن:

A fisherman



Activity

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False): استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

اسمع الاستماع اختر الاجابة

- My grandfather is a doctor.
- He wakes up early every day.
- My grandfather grows rice and vegetables.
- He sends a lot of the fruit to the factory

True False

<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- A fisherman works the sea.
a under b next c of d on
- The solar energy is a energy.
a renewable b non-renewable c coal d bad
- A fisherman fish.
a catches b plays c connects d fixes
- A teacher needs to quickly.
a eat b think c play d see

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

bus driver - respect - litter - world

There are many people around us. We should show to them. I respect the cleaner. I don't throw I respect the I say thank you when I get off the bus.

4 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصل:

- A**
- Farmers
 - The bad boy
 - The boy is disappointed.
 - Who works

- B**
- disobeyed his mom.
 - on the sea?
 - He didn't pass the test.
 - grow the food.
 - friends.

Unit 6 What do you do?

5 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

I'm Mohammed. I'm a plumber. I love my job. My job is very important for everyone. I fix the pipes so you can have water. We need water to have a shower and brush our teeth. Water is very important to our life.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Mohammed is a
☐ a farmer ☐ b plumber ☐ c teacher ☐ d vet
- Mohammed's job is very
☐ a important ☐ b bad ☐ c scary ☐ d high

B. Answer the following questions:

- Who fixes the pipes?

- Why do we need water?

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

- you - to be - Do - a teacher - want?

- respect - the - I - teacher.

- a man - a van - There's - in.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

why do you want to be a doctor

8 Write a paragraph of TWENTY FOUR (24) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٢٤) كلمة عن:

The librarian

مجاوب عنه في نهاية الوحدة

respect - shelf

Review

2

Objectives of the Review 2

أهداف المراجعة

Lesson 1: Listening and speaking

- To revise the vocabulary and language from Units 4 - 6.

- يراجع التلاميذ المفردات والقواعد اللغوية الموجودة بالوحدات من ٤ إلى ٦.

Lesson 2: Phonics and Assessment

1. To revise the key letter sounds from Units 4 - 6.

- يراجع التلاميذ الصوتيات من الوحدات ٤ إلى ٦.

2. To evaluate progress in Units 4 - 6.

- يتم تقييم مدى نجاح التلاميذ في استيعاب الوحدات من ٤ إلى ٦.

1 Listen and write the words:

استمع واكتب الكلمة

استمع إلى المفردات:



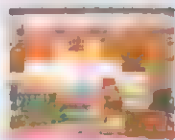
نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



1-



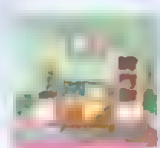
2-



3-



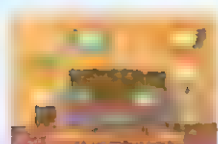
4-



5-



6-



7-



8-



9-



10-



11-



12-

2 Look at the pictures and answer the questions:

انظر للصورة واجيب عن الأسئلة



1. What's the mechanic doing?



2. What's the mail carrier doing?

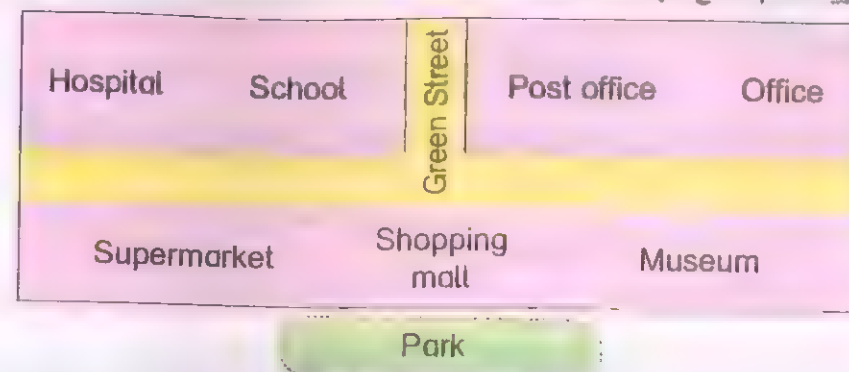


3. What's the electrician doing?



4. What's the driver doing?

3 Look and correct the sentences:

انظر وصحح الجمل
انظر إلى هذه الخريطة ثم صحح الجمل الآتية:

5. The hospital is between the school.
 6. The school is next to the museum.
 7. The park is under the shopping mall.
 8. The supermarket is behind the school.

4 Listen. Write the start and finish:

استمع واكتب البداية والنهاية

استمع للنص الآتي واكتب البداية والنهاية في الخريطة السابقة:

Tapescript



نص الاستماع

استمع إلى النص



1. Go straight ahead. Turn right, go past the school. It's on the right.
 2. Go straight ahead, keep going. Go past the post office. It's on the left.
 3. Walk past the post office and turn right. The entrance is on the left, on Green Street.

1. Start: Green Street Finish: hospital
 2. Start: Finish: office
 3. Start: Finish:

5 Match the sentences to the picture. Then write this is, that is, these are, or those are:

صل الجمل بالصورة ثم اكتب اسم الإشارة المناسب

1. , a screwdriver.
 2. my tape measure.
 3. our tools.
 4. my tools.



PRONUNCIATION

1 Underline the stressed syllables in these jobs:

ضع خط تحت المقطع المشدد في الوظائف الآتية:

1- doctor

2- plumber

3- collector

4- driver

5- teacher

6- mechanic

2 Point and say. Then write these words:

اشرح وقل ثم اكتب هذه الكلمات:



1

2

3

4

TERM 1: PROJECT

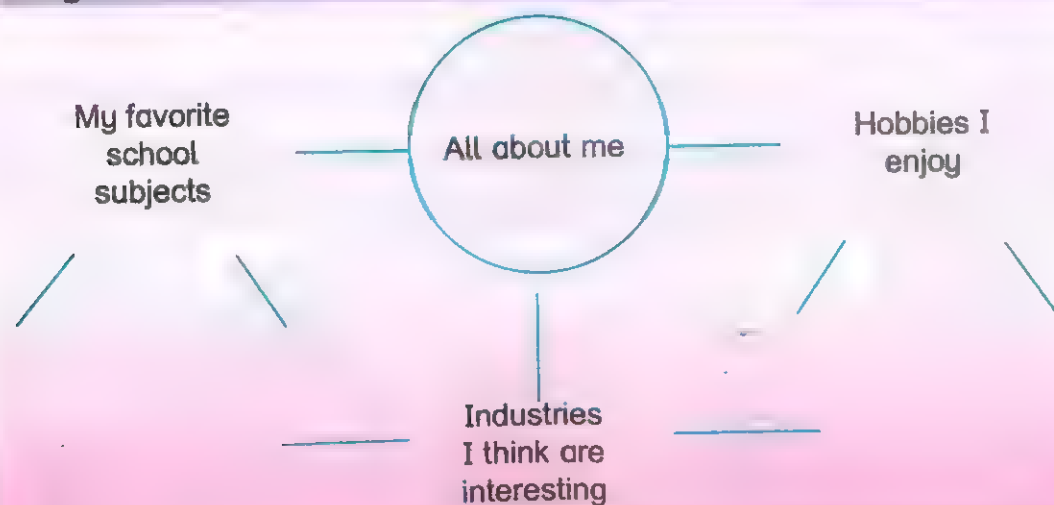
1 Read and think about the project:

اقرأ ثم فكر في عمل المشروع:

Think about what job you want to do when you're older. Think about how it helps the community. Write a message to yourself in the future.

2 Think about what you know and what you enjoy. Complete the diagram:

فكر فيما تعرفه وما تستمتع به. أكمل الجدول:



3 Read, think, and complete:

اقرأ وفكر واكمل:

What do you want to be?

What do you need to do this job? Think about:

- Do you need to go to university?
- Do you need to practice?

Where does someone with this job work?

How does this job help the community?

4 Work in a group. Present your job:

اعمل في مجموعات وقدم وظيفتك:

I want
to be a
teacher.



5 Look, write, and complete. Write a message to yourself in the future:

انظر واكتب واكمل: اكتب رسالة عن نفسك في المستقبل:

Dear

I will work in a I want to be a because

I need to to be a good

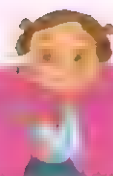
I will help people

I hope you think your job is interesting.

Lots of love,

Put the letter in an envelope and then put it somewhere safe.

Read it when you're older.



1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False): استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):



True False

1 Amr is a farmer.

☐ ☐

2 Amr uses a screwdriver.

☐ ☐

3 Amr studied electricity.

☐ ☐

4 Amr loves his job.

☐ ☐

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Supermarkets food to customers.

- a sell b eat c drink d draw

2. Never anything electric with wet hands.

- a touches b touched c touch d touching

3. are the plumber's tools.

- a That b Those c This d Then

4. The mechanic cars.

- a fixes b plays c eats d draws

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

front - flowers - next - between

I live in a big house. It's to my school. There is a park in of the school. There are lots of and trees in the park.

4 Read and match (A) with (B):

اقرأ وصل:

A

B

1 The garbage collector

a. fixes pipes.

2 My mom and dad

b. work in an office.

3 The mechanics fix

c. cars.

4 The plumber

d. collects trash.

e. homes.

5 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجيب عن الأسئلة:

Ahmed is a farmer. He wakes up early every day. He goes to his farm on his tractor. He grows oranges. All year, he looks after the trees and he gives them water and nutrients. Then, he picks the fruit. Ahmed sends a lot of the fruit to the factory to make orange juice. Ahmed is a good farmer.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The main idea of the passage is about a

- a farmer b teacher c plumber d driver

2. Ahmed sends a lot of fruit to the

- a hospital b factory c school d club

B. Answer the following questions:

3. How does Ahmed go to his farm?

4. What does Ahmed grow?

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. the tourism - Samir - industry - in - works.

2. save - you - How - electricity - do?

3. mechanic - is - doing - What - the?

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

how fast can electricity travel

8 Write a paragraph of TWENTY FOUR (24) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٢٤) كلمة عن:

A teacher

students - helps

إدارة
الشرابية

1

ساعة القاهرة



1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False): استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):



True False

- | | | |
|------------------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1 Spiders are helpful for farmers. | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 2 Snakes are dangerous. | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 3 Crocodiles eat insects. | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 4 Pelicans don't eat fish. | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- I like very much. We make sugar out of it.
a onions b rice c watermelons d sugarcane
- A helps children find books in the library.
a fisherman b dentist c librarian d plumber
- apples are on the tree. I can't get them.
a That b This c Those d Than
- An elephant is than a bird. It's about 2000 kg.
a big b bigger c biggest d as big

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

living room - fantastic - building - relax

We moved to a new apartment. It's ① My favorite room is the bedroom. I can ② and do my homework quietly. My mom's favorite room is the ③ with the balcony.

اقرأ وصل:

4 Read and match (A) with (B):

- | | | |
|----------------------|-----------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1 I live in a city | <input type="radio"/> | a. tomatoes and potatoes. |
| 2 The museum is next | <input type="radio"/> | b. called Hurghada. |
| 3 Is a mango tree | <input type="radio"/> | c. to the supermarket. |
| 4 Farmers can grow | <input type="radio"/> | d. renewable or non-renewable? |
| | <input type="radio"/> | e. grow into a big tree. |

5 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

My friend Abeer works at a supermarket near my house. My family and I see her every week when we buy food. Abeer checks the food is fresh. She helps us when we can't find something. She is very kind and happy.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Abeer works at a
a school b supermarket c hospital d bank
- We see Abeer every
a week b month c day d year

B. Answer the following questions:

- What does Abeer check?
- When does Abeer help us?

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

- farmers - do - What - grow?
- being - a - I - plumber - love
- fast - travel - How - electricity - can?

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

where do you live

8 Write a paragraph of TWENTY FOUR (24) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٢٤) كلمة عن:

fur - desert

The fennec fox

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False): استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):



True False

1 We grow sugarcane in the balcony.

2 We water the plants every Friday.

3 The roots grow under the soil.

4 Tomatoes have seeds inside.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. I think cats are than dogs.

- a nice b nicer c nicest d very nice

2. My uncle lives in a He can see water everywhere.

- a cave b tent c houseboat d desert

3. I eat fruit exercise.

- a but b and c so d too

4. A: is the book? B: It's next to the chair.

- a What b Who c When d Where

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

sleep - without - flat - carry

My favorite animal is the camel. Camels can live 1 water for a long time. They have 2 feet to help them walk on the sand. They can 3 people and things across the desert.

4 Read and match (A) with (B):

اقرأ وصل:

1 We go to the hospital

2 The pelican eats

3 A mechanic fixes

4 My house is

a. small fish.

b. cars and buses.

c. very helpful.

d. behind the bank.

e. when we are sick.

5 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجيب عن الأسئلة:

Nada moved to a new apartment with her family. The new apartment is big. It is near Nada's school. It has two bedrooms, a living room, a kitchen and a bathroom. Nada's favorite room is the living room. She can play games and watch TV in it. There is a big balcony, too. Nada can see the street from the balcony.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The new apartment has bedrooms.

- a two b three c four d five

2. Nada can see the street from the

- a bedroom b balcony c kitchen d bathroom

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What is Nada's favorite room?

4. Where is the new apartment?

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. do - you - Where - work?

2. are - bigger - Elephants - dogs - than .

3. rice - We - in - Egypt - grow.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

maggie works at the supermarket

8 Write an email of TWENTY FOUR (24) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب إيميل من (٢٤) كلمة عن:

eyes - grass

Horses

To your friend Mustafa. Your email address is hazem@yahoo.com and your friend's email address is mustafa@gmail.com

New Message

To: _____ Cc Bcc

From: _____

Subject: _____

Dear _____,

Yours,



1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False): استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):



	True	False
1 I like unhealthy food.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
2 I always get up early.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
3 Dad cooks healthy food.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
4 We eat bananas and grapes for dessert.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- The roots grow the soil, we can't see them well.
a under b above c in front of d opposite
- This is near my house. It sells good food.
a post office b living room c supermarket d school
- The fennec fox thick fur.
a have b has c having d are
- I don't eat fish, I like meat.
a but b and c too d so

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

horns - small - beaks - birds

Pelicans are amazing animals. They are 1 They eat 2 fish. They have 3 to catch fish from the river. I can feed them at the zoo.

4 Read and match (A) with (B):

اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 Who works	a. the east of Egypt.
2 All jobs are	b. in a tent in the desert.
3 Hurghada is in	c. in our bodies.
4 Some people live	d. on the sea?
	e. very important.

5 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Rhim gazelles look very beautiful. They live in the Sahara Desert. They walk around looking for grass, leaves and plants to eat. They have big ears and long horns. They have yellow-white coats which protect them from the sun. They don't need to drink a lot of water like camels.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Rhim gazelles eat
a meat b leaves c small animals d insects
- The underlined pronoun "They" refers to
a camels b horns c rhim gazelles d ears

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What color are rhim gazelles ?

4. Where do rhim gazelles live?

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. swam - saved - child - Dad - and - the.

2. clothes - at - We - mall - buy - the shopping.

3. more - camels - horses - beautiful - Are - than?

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للاتي:

what s your favorite room?

8 Write a paragraph of TWENTY FOUR (24) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٢٤) كلمة عن:

Life on a farm

plants - animals



1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False): استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

True False

- 1 The bus driver needs the mechanic.
- 2 The mechanic fixes the bus.
- 3 A mail carrier bakes bread.
- 4 The garbage collector keeps our streets dirty.

<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. The bear lifts its to eat the fish.
a beak b teeth c paw d fur
2. It's hot today. We need to turn on the
a bus b van c fan d fun
3. is a small bird. It's flying in the sky.
a These b That c Those d Than
4. Camels large, flat feet.
a has b having c have d is

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

encourages - patient - surprising - most

Mr Hany is my English teacher. I like him very much. He is very 1
He 2 us to be good at English. I want to be a teacher like Mr Hany. I think
it's the 3 important job in the world.

4 Read and match (A) with (B):

اقرأ وصل:

- A
- 1 A plumber
 - 2 Never put anything
 - 3 Do you like
 - 4 These mechanics

- B
- a. helping people?
 - b. connects the pipes and faucets.
 - c. work in the repair shop.
 - d. into the socket.
 - e. delivers letters.

5 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجيب عن الاسئلة:

My name is Mazen. My father is an electrician. It's a great thing to be an electrician. His work is very tiring, but he is happy when he helps people fix their lights and watch TV. He earns enough money to live well. On the other hand, his job is very dangerous and needs a special skill. He always advises me not to touch anything electrical with wet hands.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The electrician's work is
a tiring b easy c happy d bad
2. My father earns money to live well.
a a lot b little c enough d any

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What is the electrician's advice?
4. Why does the electrician need a special skill?

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملا صحيحة:

1. driver - me - takes - to - A bus - school.
2. can - see - lightning - We - of - a flash.
3. job - Which - the - is - difficult - most?

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للاتي:

i need to repaint my bedroom

8 Write a paragraph of TWENTY FOUR (24) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (24) كلمة عن:

grow - seeds

Tomatoes



1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False): استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):



True False

- 1 Crocodiles are small.
- 2 Spiders are very helpful.
- 3 Snakes and crocodiles are dangerous.
- 4 Crocodiles eat insects, birds and lizards.

<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Where you live?
a do b does c is d are
2. Horses are animals. They can carry heavy things.
a weak b strong c bad d tall
3. Mr Ibrahim his house yellow.
a recleaned b repainted c replanted d redo
4. These my father's tools.
a is b am c are d was

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

biggest - Nile - family - fastest

My friend Saleh lives in a village. It's next to the 1 He lives with his small 2 He has a brother and a sister. He lives in a house. It is the 3 house in the village. Saleh is a good boy. He helps his mom.

اقرأ وصل:

4 Read and match (A) with (B):

- 1 I want to play
- 2 Camels have
- 3 A builder builds
- 4 We buy food

- a. fixes ears.
- b. from the supermarket.
- c. the houses.
- d. football with you.
- e. large, flat feet.

5 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Waleed lives in a big house with his family. There is a big garden in the house. In the garden, his grandpa grows many different kinds of vegetables and fruits. He grows tomatoes, carrots, and onions. Waleed's favorite healthy food is mango. He likes to eat it and use it to make delicious juice. Waleed likes chocolate, too. He knows it's unhealthy. But he thinks it's OK.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Waleed lives in a
a farm b house c garden d tent
2. Waleed likes, but he knows it's unhealthy.
a cola b mango c honey d chocolate

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Is there a big garden in the house?
4. What's Waleed's favorite healthy food?

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. biggest - is - the - elephant - The - animal.
2. in - Egypt - sugarcane - We - grow.
3. and - leaves - plants - Rhim gazelles - eat.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

egyptian farmers produce many things

8 Write a paragraph of TWENTY FOUR (24) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٢٤) كلمة عن:

Questions

The jobs around us

- 1- What are different jobs around us?
- 2- What's your favorite job?

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False): استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

True False

1 Farmers grow food for us to eat.

2 Farmers work in the desert habitat.

3 There is much rain in the desert habitat.

4 Plants near rivers need a lot of water.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Tomatoes have inside.

a flowers b leaves c seeds d pens

2. Elephants are than dogs.

a thin b thinner c big d bigger

3. Make sure your hands are before touching anything electrical.

a dry b wet c scary d huge

4. Adel is a/an He connects pipes.

a plumber b mail carrier c electrician d teacher

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

video - eat - exercise - drink

I like healthy food. I 1 a lot. I never play 2 games. I drink a lot of water and milk, but I never 3 cola. I like chocolate, but I don't eat too much.

4 Read and match (A) with (B):

اقرأ وصل:

A

B

1 The fennec fox loses

2 The tent is made

3 The school is

4 A mechanic

a. fixes the cars.

b. a place where I learn.

c. in the balcony.

d. heat from its ears.

e. of cloth.

5 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

There are many jobs in our country. They are all important in our life. For example, the garbage collector cleans our streets. The plumber fixes the faucets and pipes. The bus driver takes us to school. The teacher teaches us many subjects.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The main idea in the text is about

a electricity b jobs c water d children

2. A helps you keep your street clean.

a farmer b teacher c garbage collector d plumber

B. Answer the following questions:

3. How does the plumber help us?

4. Who drives you to school?

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. the - Where - post - is - office?

2. thinner - are - Dogs - than - elephants.

3. food - in - I - the - cook - kitchen.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

why do plants need sunlight and water

8 Write an email of TWENTY FOUR (24) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب إيميل من (٢٤) كلمة عن:

Camels

flat feet - without water

To your friend Youssef. Your email address is samir@gmail.com and your friend's email address is youssef@yahoo.com

New Message

To:

From:

Subject:

Dear

Yours,



1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False): استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

True False

- 1 My mother is a teacher.
- 2 My mother meets a lot of students.
- 3 Being a librarian has pros and cons.
- 4 My mother always sits inside.

<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. The hospital is to the school. I can get to it quickly.
a front b next c between d behind
2. on the fan. It's very hot.
a Turn b Burn c Think d Put
3. children are going to school.
a That b These c This d Then
4. He the summer very much.
a like b likes c don't like d hate

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

special - feet - fur - feathers

Camels are amazing animals. They have large, flat 1, so they can walk on the sand. Camels can live without water for a long time. They have 2 ways to close their noses and eyes to stop the sand from coming in. We can use their 3 to make clothes. Camels can help us to carry things and people.

4 Read and match (A) with (B):

اقرأ وصل:

- A
- 1 A palace
 - 2 Egyptian farmers
 - 3 To be honest,
 - 4 In a storm,

- B
- a. grow rice, onions and tomatoes.
 - b. we sometimes see a flash of lightning.
 - c. is a place where an emperor lives.
 - d. special food for us.
 - e. you shouldn't lie.

5 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Children shouldn't go near electricity. It's very dangerous. The electrician is the only person who can fix our things because he knows how to work safely with electricity. He is careful when he does his job. He can fix old radios, cell phones and anything has electricity. He always carries his screwdriver to open his things with.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Electricity is for children.
a safe b healthy c dangerous d easy
2. The electrician always carries a
a pen b screwdriver c tap measure d bag

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What does the electrician fix?
.....
4. Why is the electrician the only person works with electricity?
.....

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. show - to - We - people - older - respect.
.....
2. does - the plant - grow - What - need to?
.....
3. drives - The - many - driver - places - to.
.....

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للاتي:

Is hurghada a city or a village

8 Write a paragraph of TWENTY FOUR (24) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (24) كلمة عن:

farmers - raise

Damietta governorate



1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False): استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

True False

- Papyrus is a very special plant.
- Romans used papyrus to make paper.
- Papyrus doesn't need a lot of water.
- Papyrus needs warm weather to grow quickly.

<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- A snake is more than a fox.
a bigger b longest c taller d dangerous
- My uncle is a He delivers letters.
a teacher b mail carrier c dentist d guide
- Green plants important for us.
a is b am c are d was
- Never touch anything electrical with hands.
a cute b wet c cold d dry

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

next - station - between - in front of

In my town, the shopping mall is on the other side of the 1, so the station is 2 the supermarket and the shopping mall. My dad's office is 3 to the park. My school is near my house. I love my town.

4 Match (A) with (B): اقرا وصل:

A

B

- | | |
|-------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1 Where is your school? | a. in the Sahara Desert. |
| 2 Rhin gazelles live | b. It's next to the park. |
| 3 There are three | c. someone tries to win. |
| 4 In a competition, | d. houses in front of the mall. |
| | e. I play it on Friday. |

5 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Hi, I'm Sally. My grandparents live in a cave. The rooms of their house are in the rock. Inside, it's never too hot or too cold. My aunt moved to a new apartment. She is very happy because she has a big balcony. My friend and his family live on a houseboat. It's small, but he loves living on water. I love living in a house because it's big. I can play outside with my brother and sister.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The underlined word "inside" refers to a/an
a apartment b cave c school d houseboat
- The balcony is
a big b small c dirty d hot

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Why is Sally's aunt happy?

4. Is the houseboat big?

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1. a village - the Nile - next to - live - I - in. أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

2. is - than - The eagle - the mouse - heavier.

3. is - most - What - the - flower - beautiful ?

7 Punctuate the following:

the hospital is next to the school

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

8 Write a paragraph of TWENTY FOUR (24) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٢٤) كلمة عن:

beautiful - beaches

My city, Alexandria



1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False): استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

نحن الاستماع الخيارات

True False

- 1 My father is a teacher.
- 2 My father gets up very early every day.
- 3 My father goes out on his car and catches fish.
- 4 My father comes back and sells his fish.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. birds are so far. I can't see them well.
a That b Those c This d Then
2. My grandparents like to live in the desert. They live in a big
a tent b apartment c garden d houseboat
3. We all respect the He cleans our streets.
a mechanic b bus driver c plumber d garbage collector
4. These seeds very small.
a am- b is c are d was

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

kinder - saw - hungry - catch

Yesterday, I saw a dog and a cat in the street. They were ① They both looked at some meat next to the restaurant. The cat ran to ② the meat first, but the dog was faster than the cat and caught the meat. The cat was angry, but the dog was ③ and gave the meat to the cat.

4 Read and match (A) with (B):

اقرأ وصل:

- | | |
|---|---|
| <p>A</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1 My mom and dad 2 That mail carrier is 3 I need to redo 4 These are the faucets | <p>B</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. delivering letters. b. in our bathroom. c. work in an office. d. the mechanic's tools. e. my homework. |
|---|---|

5 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

When Tarek was a baby, his mother bought him many blocks. Tarek liked to play with the blocks. He put one block on top of another. When he was ten years old, he started making things. He made a big house, tables, chairs and a lot of things with those blocks. Now he is thirty years old and he is an architect. He works in an office in Giza and likes his job.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Tarek's job is a/an
a electrician b teacher c architect d plumber
2. Tarek's mother bought for Tarek.
a trains b blocks c dolls d fish

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Where does Tarek work?
.....
4. How old was Tarek when he started making things?
.....

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1. on - Who - sea - works - the? أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:
2. seeds - have - Tomatoes - inside.
3. the - clean - The cleaners - school - keep.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

do you want to be healthy

8 Write a paragraph of TWENTY FOUR (24) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٢٤) كلمة عن:

bus driver - mechanic Different jobs

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....



1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False): استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):



True False

1 My brother works in the education industry.

☐ ☐

2 My brother's job is to explain the history.

☐ ☐

3 My brother can travel to many places.

☐ ☐

4 My brother doesn't like his job.

☐ ☐

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Some birds have long

- a legs b horns c faces d beaks

2. A works in the sea or rivers. He catches fish.

- a teacher b guide c fisherman d plumber

3. Crocodiles are dangerous than fish.

- a most b more c least d much

4. books are useful.

- a That b This c These d Than

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

thick - deserts - hear - loses

The fennec fox is an Egyptian desert animal. It lives in the 1 of North Africa. Its ears are big to 2 insects. The fennec fox's 3 fur keeps it warm.

4 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصل:

1 Spiders

2 Acacia trees

3 A plumber

4 We call the electrician

a. grow in the desert habitat.

b. fixes pipes and faucets.

c. when the fan doesn't work.

d. fixes cars.

e. eat small insects.

5 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Camels are amazing animals. They are perfect for the desert. Camels have large, flat feet so they can walk on the sand. Camels can live without water for a long time. They help us to carry things and people to cross the desert. Their milk is delicious. We can use camels' fur to make clothes.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Camels are amazing

- a plants b animals c habitats d insects

2. Camels have large flat to walk on the sand.

- a noses b legs c feet d tails

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Why are camels perfect for the desert?

4. How are camels helpful?

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. burnt - pancakes - I - the.

2. school - The hospital - to - is - the - next.

3. sunflowers - Why - grow - farmers - do?

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

what does papyrus need

8 Write a paragraph of TWENTY FOUR (24) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٢٤) كلمة عن:

My town "Hurghada"

Sahl Hasheeh - bazaars



1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False): استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

True False

<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

- 1 My grandfather was a good fisherman.
- 2 My grandfather planted a lot of seeds.
- 3 My grandfather's farm was in a town.
- 4 My grandfather bought crops from the market.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Can you me?
a helps b helping c help d helped
2. Ali cuts down the trees to get
a wind b electricity c wood d wool
3. We send letters at the
a school b hospital c station d post office
4. There a cat next to the chair.
a are b is c were d does
5. right. It's next to the bank.
a Turned b Turns c Turn d Turning

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

checks - helpful - breakfast - speaks

My sister Mona works at the supermarket. She's kind and 1..... She gets up at six o'clock. She has 2..... and walks to the supermarket. It's near our house. She 3..... the food is fresh and helps people when they can't find something.

4 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصل:

- 1 A guide works
- 2 A mail carrier
- 3 Never put anything
- 4 I have to fix

- a. live in a city.
- b. in the tourism industry.
- c. pipes and faucets.
- d. into a socket.
- e. delivers letters.

5 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Nabil lives in a house near the Nile. One day, Nabil and his brother Emad were watching the boats from the balcony, Nabil saw a small child fell into the river from a boat. The child shouted quickly. Nabil called his dad. Nabil's dad ran and jumped into the river. He swam and saved the child. The child thanked Nabil and his dad.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The child fell into the river and
a swam b shouted c played d ran
2. The underlined word "He" refers to
a the child b Nabil c Nabil's dad d Emad

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Where's Nabil's house?
.....
4. Why did the child thank Nabil and his dad?
.....

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. catch - the - Fishermen - fish.
2. station - Where - the - is?
3. the fish - people - to - The markets - sell - the.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

i think the rose is the most beautiful flower

8 Write a paragraph of TWENTY FOUR (24) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (24) كلمة عن:

A healthy meal

- 1- What's your favorite meal?
- 2- What healthy food do you like?



1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False): استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

True False

- 1 Noha likes tennis.
- 2 Noha doesn't eat healthy food.
- 3 Noha isn't a good player.
- 4 Noha plays football.

<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. We send letters at the
 a school b hospital c station d post office
2. The mechanic buses and cars.
 a fix b fixes c fixing d are fixing
3. I sleep in a big It has two beds.
 a bathroom b bedroom c cave d kitchen
4. Which animal is the dangerous than a fox?
 a much b many c most d more

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

live - leaves - nose - coat

The elephant is a big animal. It has a long 1 and big ears. Elephants need to 2 in very large areas because they eat and drink so much. They eat grass and 3

4 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصل:

A

B

- 1 The eagle is a bird
- 2 The emperor gave
- 3 Put the seeds
- 4 Gamila likes ice cream

- a. in the empty pot.
- b. and it can fly easily.
- c. and she likes chocolate, too.
- d. a seed to each gardener.
- e. keeps the school clean.

5 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Hisham and his brother Amr have a big farm near Alexandria. They grow many kinds of fruit like bananas, apples and mangoes. They like going to the farm and playing under the trees. One day, Amr wanted to cut down the trees to sell the wood, but Hisham was angry. Hisham stopped his brother and advised him to grow more trees.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The main idea in the passage is about
 a cutting trees b growing mangoes
 c keeping animals d playing under trees
2. Hisham and Amr grow many kinds of
 a vegetables b rice c fruit d dessert

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Why did Amr want to cut down the trees?
4. What did Hisham advise Amr to do?

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. the city - very - Life - noisy - in - is.
2. do - think - a plant - Why - dies - you?
3. smaller - the - is - camel - than - The horse

7 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

There s a man in a van

8 Write an email of TWENTY FOUR (24) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب إيميل من (٢٤) كلمة عن:

wind energy - gas and oil

Renewable and non-renewable energy

To your friend Abdullah. Your email address is mustafa@yahoo.com and your friend's email address is abdullah@gmail.com

New Message	
To	Cc Bcc
From	
Subject	
Dear	
Yours,	



1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False): استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):



True False

1 There's an old fisherman in a city.

☐ True ☐ False

2 The plumber fixed the engine.

☐ True ☐ False

3 The fisherman sells fish on his old car.

☐ True ☐ False

4 The mechanic took fish only.

☐ True ☐ False

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. A good teacher is always ready to

- a sleep b learn c cook d fix

2. Mr Karam math.

- a teaching b teacher c teaches d teach

3. The guide works in the industry.

- a fishing b tourism c energy d farming

4. is the socket.

- a These b Those c That d They

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

bus - Fishermen - cheese - rice

The land in Damietta is rich in nutrients. The farmers can grow 1 , tomatoes, potatoes, wheat, lemons, grapes and guaves. 2 catch fish in the sea. Domiati 3 is very famous. Life is good in Damietta.

4 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصل:

اقرأ وصل:

1 We sleep

2 An electrician

3 Camels are

4 The sunflower is

a. perfect for the desert.

b. taller than the daisy.

c. connects the electricity.

d. to buy food.

e. in the bedroom.

5 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

I'm Sara. I live with my family in Safaga. It's in the east of Egypt on the Red Sea. It's a small town. In Safaga, there is a beach and there are a lot of interesting things to do. Many tourists visit Safaga and go on safaris. They can swim in the sea. There are many bazaars and many hotels. My father is a guide so he can see many tourists. He speaks English well.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Safaga is a town.

- a big b boring c small d cold

2. Sara's father speaks well.

- a English b Arabic c Chinese d French

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Where is Safaga?

4. What can tourists do in the sea?

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1. animal - The - elephant - is - the biggest. أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملاً صحيحة:

2. catches - Which - first - animal - the fish?

3. jobs - interesting - Some - very - are

7 Punctuate the following:

On saturday ahmed went to the park.

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

8 Write a paragraph of TWENTY FOUR (24) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٢٤) كلمة عن:

Your new apartment

bedroom - street



1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False): استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

True False

- | | | |
|-------------------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1 Ahmed lives in Cairo. | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 2 Ahmed is in primary four. | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 3 Ahmed's mother is a doctor. | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 4 Ahmed's father works in hospital. | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- We love our teacher because he is always
a angry b bad c sad d patient
- How it work?
a do b does c are d were
- Look, bird is flying.
a there b that c those d they
- The are swimming in the river.
a swans b sweets c shoes d slippers

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

plays - market - on - catches

My name is Hatem. My uncle is a fisherman. He wakes up early every day. He goes out ① his boat and ② fish. He goes home with a lot of fish. He sells some fish at the ③ He cooks some fish and eats his lunch. My uncle likes his job because it's fun. I want to be a fisherman when I grow up.

4 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصل:

اقرأ وصل:

- A**
- Honesty is more important
 - There's a plant
 - We can buy food
 - We go to school

- B**
- to cook
 - at the supermarket.
 - to learn.
 - than winning.
 - behind the couch.

5 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

My name is Hend. I'm in grade four. I live in a big house with my family. We have three bedrooms and two bathrooms. My mum cooks food in the kitchen. We watch TV in the living room. My favorite room is my bedroom. I like to read and do my homework in my bedroom. I like to help my father on the farm. He grows tomatoes and onions for us.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Hend's father grows and onions.
a mangoes b potatoes c tomatoes d dates
- Hend's favorite room is the
a living room b kitchen c bathroom d bedroom

B. Answer the following questions:

- What grade is Hend in?
- Where does Hend's mother cook food?

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

- huge - The - and - scary - crocodile - is.
- next - post office - to - the - The library - is.
- keep - cleaners - clean - The - school - the.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

my village is on the Nile

8 Write a paragraph of TWENTY FOUR (24) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٢٤) كلمة عن:

Camels

strong - desert



1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False): استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):



True False

1 Laila played with blocks when she was a baby.

☐ True ☐ False

2 Laila made a little house for her dog.

☐ True ☐ False

3 Laila always carried a tape measure.

☐ True ☐ False

4 Laila wants to be electrician.

☐ True ☐ False

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Forty years ago, the land very dry.

- a has b had c was d is

2. I think beans are more than potatoes.

- a thinner b smaller c taller d delicious

3. What's Damietta famous ?

- a to b for c at d on

4. A snake is dangerous than a fox.

- a least b much c more d most

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

plumber - delivers - electrician - mechanic

All jobs are important in our country. A ① fixes our cars. A garbage collector takes away all garbage. A mail carrier ② letters and parcels. A bus driver drives students to school. An ③ connects electricity to our homes.

4 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصل:

A

1 It's dangerous to touch

2 Plants near rivers and lakes

3 Rhim gazelles live

4 The sunflower dies

B

a. need a lot of water.

b. and drops its seeds.

c. fixes your car.

d. in the Sahara Desert.

e. electricity with your wet hands.

5 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

There are a lot of animals that live in the desert. Rhim gazelles are one of those animals that lives in the Sahara Desert. They are beautiful animals. They have big ears and long horns. They have yellow-white coats to **protect** them from the sun. They can walk easily on the sand. Rhim gazelles can live about 14 years. They eat grass, leaves and plants.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The underlined word "protect" means

- a save b fix c feed d send

2. They have yellow-white

- a coats b feet c ears d horns

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What do rhim gazelles have on their heads?

4. How long can rhim gazelles live?

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. plants - to make - We - green - use - the land.

2. favorite - living room - is - My - room - the.

3. How - use - safely - can - electricity - we?

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

why does the bear look angry

8 Write a paragraph of TWENTY FOUR (24) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٢٤) كلمة عن:

Healthy food

vegetables - fruits



(A) Listening

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



استمع واختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1 Listen and choose:

1. The is the tallest animal.

- a** giraffe **b** lion **c** crocodile

2. Crocodiles' bodies are

- a** tall **b** long **c** small

(B) Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialog:

اقرأ واكمل الحوار:

live - desert - snake

Aya : Look at this picture. What is this?

Aliaa : This is a 1

Aya : Where does it 2?

Aliaa : It lives in the 3

(C) Reading Comprehension

3 Read and choose the correct answer:

اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

Hi! I am Ali. I want to be a teacher. Students always ask surprising questions. Teachers need to think quickly. They need to encourage their students. They need to be very patient. They work for many hours every day. It is hard work, but it is exciting.

- Choose the correct answer:

1. Ali wants to be a/an [plumber - teacher - electrician]
 2. Students always ask questions. [boring - surprising - important]
 3. Teachers need to quickly. [think - sweep - drive]
 4. Teachers need to be very [bad - patient - tall]
 5. Teaching is hard work, but it is [exciting - boring - bad]

(D) Vocabulary and Structures

4 Choose the correct answer:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. A horse is than a camel.

- a** fast **b** fastest **c** faster

2. My dad is Egyptian, his dad is French.

- a** because **b** so **c** but

3. children are watching TV.

- a** These **b** This **c** That

4. The is a bird.

- a** bear **b** snake **c** pelican

5. A delivers letters and parcels.

- a** mechanic **b** bus driver **c** mail carrier

(E) Writing

5 Rearrange the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. grow - Egypt - We - rice - in2. helpful - Spiders - are.3. Let's - kitchen - organize - our.4. post - Where - the - is - office?

6 Write a paragraph of Four (4) sentences about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من أربع جمل عن:

A fisherman





(A) Listening

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

1 Listen and choose:

1. My father works at the

a hospital

b market

c repair shop

2. My father fixes people's

a legs

b teeth

c hands

(B) Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialog:

اقرأ واكمل الحوار:

eat - lizards - know

Sara : What animals do you 1

Tarek : The fennec fox and the eagle.

Sara : What does the fennec fox 2

Tarek : It eats insects and small 3

(C) Reading Comprehension

3 Read and choose the correct answer:

اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

My name is Zain. I live in a village next to the Nile. I live in a house with my family. Our house isn't the biggest in the village. It is between a yellow house and a brown house. There are tall trees behind the house.

- Choose the correct answer:

1. Zain lives in a

[city - village - town]

2. There are tall trees the house.

[near - beside - behind]

3. Zain lives with his

[family - friends - trees]

4. The house is a yellow house and a brown house.

[behind - between - beside]

5. The village is next to the

[sea - desert - Nile]

(D) Vocabulary and Structures

4 Choose the correct answer:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. Tomatoes have inside.

a flowers

b leaves

c seeds

2. Camels are than horses.

a slowest

b slow

c slower

3. Crocodiles and snakes number of small animals.

a cross

b control

c carry

4. I like playing tennis, I can't play well.

a and

b from

c but

5. The shopping mall is next the museum.

a to

b in

c at

(E) Writing

5 Rearrange the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. is - big - How - flower - the?

2. live - house - I - a - in.

3. need - water - sunlight - and - Plants.

4. raise - in - Egypt - We - chickens.

6 Write a paragraph of Four (4) sentences about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من أربع جمل عن:

Scary animals



Listening Material

نصوص الاستماع الواردة في الكتاب



نصوص الاستماع الواردة في الكتاب المدرسي

Review 1

1- Listen and write the words:

- | | |
|---------------|---------------|
| 1. seeds | 2. watermelon |
| 3. fennec fox | 4. crocodile |
| 5. emperor | 6. leaf |
| 7. onions | 8. shoot |
| 9. snake | 10. spider |
| 11. roots | 12. sugarcane |
| 13. camel | 14. palace |
| 15. flower | |

Review 2

1- Listen and write the words:

- | | |
|----------------|----------------------|
| 1. kitchen | 2. mail carrier |
| 3. supermarket | 4. garbage collector |
| 5. bedroom | 6. plumber |
| 7. living room | 8. balcony |
| 9. mechanic | 10. bathroom |
| 11. hospital | 12. library |

نصوص الاستماع الخاصة بأسئلة الاستماع
الواردة في الوحدات والاختبارات الخاصة بكتاب

Bit Bit

Unit 1

Lesson (1)

Farmers are good for our country. They produce many things. They can grow onions and carrots. They raise chickens. We can see healthy food in Egypt.

Al Azhar Test

My dad is a scientist. He likes walking in the desert, but the desert is very hot.

Activity (1) - Unit 1

Yesterday, I read a folktale from China. It was about the emperor who lived in a beautiful palace. He gave pots and seeds to the gardeners to grow plants. Cheng was only good and honest. Cheng was the next emperor.

Unit 2

Lesson (1)

Crocodiles are huge and scary. They eat meat and fish. They control the number of small animals.

Al Azhar Test

Horses are very fast animals. They eat grass and drink fresh water. They can live up to thirty years.

Activity (2) - Unit 2

Camels are amazing! They are beautiful, strong animals. They help to carry heavy

things and people to cross the desert. Their milk is delicious. We can use their fur to make clothes. They can live without water for a long time.

Unit 3

Lesson (1)

Tomatoes are green before they are red. Tomatoes have seeds inside. We can take the seeds and grow new tomatoes. We plant a seed and the plant grows. We water the plant every day and the roots grow under the soil.

Al Azhar Test

Samir is my friend. We go to school by bus. Samir wants to be a doctor, but I want to be a teacher.

Activity (3) - Unit 3

There are different plant habitats. We can't grow plants in any habitat. For example, papyrus needs river habitat because it needs a lot of water to grow. So each plant needs its habitat.

Review 1

Activity (4)

Camels are strong and they can carry people and things across the desert. They are tall animals with thin legs. Their milk is delicious and we can use their fur to make clothes. Camels are good animals for the desert.

Unit 4

Lesson (1)

Omar is a student in primary four. Omar lives in a city. Omar lives with his family. His apartment is very big. It has a big balcony. He likes the living room very much.

Listening

Lessons (4 & 5)

My friend Mona works at a supermarket near my house. My family and I see her every week when we buy food. Mona checks the food is fresh. She helps us when we can't find something. She is very kind and happy.

Al Azhar Test

Ahmed is a good boy. He lives in a small village. He goes to a primary school. Ahmed's school is next to the hospital.

Activity (5) - Unit 4

Nada loves her town. It is big, and it has offices, schools, parks, and many other places. Nada's town is clean and quiet. It is a good place to live.

Unit 5

Lesson (1)

There are many interesting jobs. A mechanic fixes buses and cars. An electrician loves things work. A garbage collector collects the trash. A mail carrier delivers your letters and parcels.

Lesson (3)

Amr, Fatma and Farid are cousins. When Amr was a child, he wanted to be an electrician. He always carried a screwdriver. Fatma wanted to be an architect. Farid wanted to be a teacher.

Al Azhar Test

Ihab is a fisherman. He is 40 years old. He goes out on his boat and catches fish.